

1508.

Almeyda.

which is the Reason, that though it have nothing of its own, it abounds in all Things; and is plentifully supplied from the Province of *Mogostân* in *Persia*, and the Islands *Kishom*^b, *Larek*, and others. About the Year 1273, King *Malek Kaerz* possessed all the Land, from the Island *Ferun*, to that of *Bahçayn*^c, and bordered upon the King of *Gordunshâb*, of the Province of *Mogostân*. This King subtly obtaining of *Malck*, the Island of *Ferun*, as a Place of no Worth^e, after he was fortified therein, drove his Benefactor out of all his Dominions; and translating the City *Ormûz*, where the King kept his Court before, to this Island, he grew so formidable, that the King of *Persia*, fearing he would refuse to pay the Tribute the other had done, prepared to invade him: But he of *Gordunshâb* prevented him, by imposing on himself a yearly Tribute, and offering to do him Homage by his Ambassadors, every five Years. In this Tyrant began the City and Kingdom of *Ormûz*; afterwards, possessed by his Heirs, and others, for the most Part, violently.

Albuquerque arrived there.

ABOUT the End of September, when *Albuquerque* arrived there, *Sayf addin*, a Youth of twelve Years of Age, reigned, and, over him, his Slave *Khajah Atar*^d, a Man subtil and courageous. Who hearing what had been done by that Commander, made Preparations, laying an Embargo upon the Ships in the Harbour, and hiring Troops from the neighbouring Provinces, *Persians*, *Arabians*, and others: So that when the Portuguese Fleet entered the Port, there were in the Town 30,000 fighting Men; among them 4000 *Persians*, most expert Archers, and in the Harbour, 400 Vessels; sixty of considerable Bulk, with 2500 Men. *Albuquerque*, to shew those People the Greatness of his Resolution, came to an Anchor among five of the largest Ships, firing his Cannon to strike a Terror along the Shore, which was soon covered with above 8000 Men. Finding no Message came from the King, he sent aboard the e

biggest of those Ships, which was of *Kambaya*, and seemed to ride Admiral: The Captain whereof presently repaired to him, and was received with Civility and State. *Albuquerque* told him, he had Orders to take the King of *Ormûz* into his Protection, and grant him Leave to trade in those Seas, provided he paid a reasonable Tribute: But in case of Refusal, he was to make War. It was, doubtless, no small Presumption to offer a King the Liberty of his own Seas, and impose Conditions upon him, with that Handful of 460 Men, against 33,000; and seven Ships, to 400.

THE Moor delivered his Message to the King, and his Governor *Khajah Atar*; who presently returned one *Khajah Beyram*, to excuse their not having sent to know what the Portuguese demanded in that Port, promising the Governor should come next Day. He came not, but the Messages continued, in order to gain Time to fortify the City, and receive farther Supplies. *Albuquerque* saw into the Drift, and told *Beyram*, he need only return with the Acceptation of Peace as offered, or the Declaration of War. *Beyram* brought Word, that *Ormûz* used not to pay, but receive Tribute. As Night drew on, the Noise of warlike Instruments and Shouts, were heard from all Parts. The Morning discovered the Walls, Shore, and Vessels, crowded with armed Men; while the Windows, and Tops of the Houses, were filled with both Sexes, and all Ages, as Spectators of what should ensue. *Albuquerque* began to play his Cannon furiously, and was answered by the Enemy; who taking Advantage of the Smoke, which hindered the Sight, attacked his Ships with a hundred and thirty Boats well manned, which did some Damage with Showers of Arrows; but received more, many being sunk, and the rest forced by the Artillery to retire. Yet they made a second Onset; but were so received, that the Sea was coloured with Blood.

1508

Almeyda.

Attacks the City.

^a Called also *Kishmish*; in the Original *Quixome* ^b In the Portuguese, *Baharem* ^c This Transaction is related differently in the History of *Harmûz* or *Ormûz*, written by one of its Kings, and given us in the Abstract by *Teixeira*, at the End of his History of *Persia*. There we are told, that in the Year of the *Hijrah*, 700, and of Christ, 1302, the Turks from *Turkestan*, in *Tartary*, having over-ran *Persia*, as far as the *Persian Gulf*, *Mir Babaddin Ayaz Seyfin*, the fifteenth King of *Harmûz*, resolved to leave the Continent, where his Dominions then were, and retire to some of the adjacent Islands. He first passed over with his People to the large Island of *Brokt*, called by the Portuguese, *Quixome*, very near the Coast; and then removed to a desert Isle, two Leagues distant Eastward, which belonged to *Neyn*, King of *Keys*, of whom he begged it; and built a City, calling it *Harmûz*, which was the Name of his Capital on the Coast, [the Ruins of which are still extant to the East of *Gomrûn*]. But the *Arabs* and *Persians* call the Isle *Gerûn*, from a Fisherman, who lived on it when *Ayaz* first landed there. In two hundred Years it throve so fast, as to extend its Dominion over great Part of *Arabia*, much of *Persia*, and all the Gulf as far as *Basrab*. It became also the chief Mart in those Parts for Trade, (which before was at *Keys*) until the Portuguese subdued it, after which it declined through their Insolences and Oppressions. *Ayaz Seyfin* was succeeded by *Amir Ayaz addin Gordun Shâb*. Thus the Reader sees, that *Malek Keys*, mentioned in the Text, is no proper Name, but signifies only the King of *Keys* or *Karz*; and that instead of *The King of Gordun Shâb* of *Mogostân*, it should be *Gordun Shâb*, or King, of *Mogostân*; nor was it he, but *Ayaz* who had the Island granted him. The Histories of foreign Parts, written by Europeans, abound with such Errors. Of *Ormûz* it was said, that supposing the World to be a Ring, *Ormûz* was the Jewel in it. ^d In the Original, *Cajê Atar*

1508.

Almeida.
Burns the
Shipping.

By this Time, *Albuquerque* had sunk two of the great Ships, and taken a third, though with great Opposition; forcing the *Moors* to leap into the Sea. Mean Time, the rest of the Captains had mastered other Ships, and running along the Shore, set Fire to above thirty more. Which cutting their Cables, were drove flaming upon the *Persian Coast*, where they burnt others that lay aground. This struck so great a Terror into all that Multitude, that they fled to the City; and *Khajah Attar* sending to offer *Albuquerque* all that had been demanded, he stopped farther Proceedings. But perceiving the Deceitfulness of the *Moor*, threatened much worse Effects of his Anger, in case he persisted in his Wiles. Thus with the Loss of only ten Men, most of the Enemy's Vessels full of Riches, were either burnt, sunk, or torn to Pieces; and seventeen hundred of them killed, the dead Bodies floating upon the Water. Many were seen with Ornaments of beaten Gold, which the *Portuguese* fished for. Who observed, that several were wounded with their own Arrows; there being none used among the *Portuguese*.

The King becomes tributary.

KHOJAH ATTAR, considering the Damage received, and what might ensue, called a Council; where it was agreed to submit to *Albuquerque's* Demands. The Articles were drawn, and sworn to by both Parties: Their Substance was, that the King of *Ormuz* did submit himself to King *Emanuel*, with the Tribute of 15,000 *Xerephines* yearly; and should assign the *Portuguese* Ground to build a Fort. The Fort was immediately begun, and much advanced in few Days: But *Khajah Attar* could not bear with it. He feigned, that Ambassadors were come to receive the Tribute they used to pay the King of *Persia*; therefore desired *Albuquerque* to give them an Answer, since his King was now subject to the Crown of *Portugal*. He guessed at the Design, and bid *Khajah Attar* send somebody to him, who might carry the Answer. The Messengers being come, he put Bullets and Spears into their Hands, telling them, that was the Coin the Tribute should be paid in. *Khajah Attar*, finding his Plot fail, endeavoured to corrupt the *Portuguese* with Money; and prevailed with five Seamen. One of them was a Founder, who cast some Cannon there; and another informed him, that the Enemy were not compleat 460: Hereby animated, he studied to break the Peace, refusing to deliver up those Men, and pretending at the same Time, it was *Albuquerque* who broke it.

Breaks the Agreement.

ALBUQUERQUE began to revenge this Affront, but with little Success, because the Captains employed, opposed it. *Khajah Attar*, perceiving this, at Night fired a Boat the *Portuguese*.

* A *Xerephin*, or *Sharifin* is worth about half a Crown of *Gomala Paz*, before related.

Time, one of the Deserters cried from the Wall, *Alonso de Albuquerque*, defend the Boat with your 400 Men, and you shall meet 700 Archers. Nor was this to be admired at, since some of the Captains themselves, gave Intelligence to the Enemy, and persuaded those five to desert. *Albuquerque* burning with Rage, attempted to fire some Ships in the Arsenal. But failing, resolved next to besiege the City; and having taken some that carried in Provisions, cut off their Hands, Ears, and Noses, and sent them in to the great Terror of all. There was a hot Dispute about filling up some Wells, that supplied the Besieged: Information that they were filled with Carcasses of Men and Horses, the Captain and Guard that maintained them, being all slain. The King, and *Khajah Attar*, came to second this Action, and *Albuquerque* was in great Danger, his Retreat being cut off. But a fortunate Cannon Ball opened a Way, putting the Enemies Horse into Confusion.

1508.

Almeida.

ALBUQUERQUE in these Actions, found his Men ill disposed to obey: Among the rest, three Captains resolving to leave him, and sail for *India*, drew up a Paper of Reasons, why he ought to desist from that Enterprize, which the General gave to one of the Masons to lay under a Stone in the Work, saying, he had answered, and would be glad to see who durst remove the Stone to read his Answer. Though each was much offended at this, yet none replied. But jealous about the Command of the Fort when built, the three put in Execution their Design of quitting him. This troubled *Albuquerque*; yet he resolved not to desist, although two Captains that staid with him, opposed him, desirous to accompany the others: But he used them with such Severity, that they were forced to obey him.

Albuquerque deserts.

FROM *Babrayn* to *Keyshom* sailed a Fleet with Relief of Men and Provisions, which *Albuquerque* pursued: But missing of it, fell upon a Country House of the King's, guarded by three hundred Foot, and sixty Horse, and beat them out; killing eighty with the Loss of one Man. He returned to *Keyshom*, and fell upon five hundred Archers, sent to *Ormuz* by the King of *Lar* (in *Persia*) under the Command of his two Nephews, and slew them and most of their Men, though he had but eighty with him. The Brothers he sent to *Khajah Attar* as a Present. The Town was burnt; and there being taken among the Plunder a Carpet, so big, that the Soldiers were about cutting it, for the Conveniency of Carriage, *Albuquerque* bought, and sent it afterwards to *Sant Jago*, in *Galicia*. Finding he had but few Men left, those much harassed, and Winter coming on,

Is forced to desist.

* This Action was no less barbarous than that

be

1508.

Almeida.

Return and
burns Ka-
layât.

he resolved to go to *Sokotra*, and gave Leave to a *Yuan de Nova* to sail for *India*, where he had commanded a Fleet before.

ALBUQUERQUE wintered at *Sokotra*, and relieved the *Portugueze* who were there oppressed by Famine. To this Effect, he went himself with his Ship to *Cape Guardafu*, and sent others towards *Melinda*, and *Cape Fum*, to seize some Ships for the sake of their Provisions, which put a Stop to the growing Evil. He then resolved for *Ormuz*, though too weak to effect what he intended. Yet at least to sound the Designs of the King, and his Friend *Khojah Attar*. By the Way he resolved to be revenged on *Kalayât*, for Injuries done to some *Portugueze*. This Town is seated beyond *Cape Siagro*, called also *Cape Rasfelgat*, at the Mouth of the *Persian Gulf*. On the Back of it is a Mountain, which has only some Passes, that open a Communication with the neighbouring Country. One of these Passes is just opposite to the Town, through which is managed most of the Trade of that Province of *Arabia*, called *Al Yaman*^a, which is full of populous Cities, fruitful, and of great Trade. *Albuquerque* no sooner arrived, but he landed and entered the Town; some of whose Inhabitants fled to the Mountains, and others were slain in the Streets. He stayed there three Nights, upon one of which, a thousand *Moors*, getting in by Surprise, did much Hurt: But the *Portugueze* gathering, killed many, put the rest to Flight, and burnt the Place. They got a great Quantity of Provisions, which was most of the Booty; and arrived at *Ormuz* the thirteenth of September.

Ill Success
at Hormuz.

ALFONSO DE ALBUQUERQUE presently advertised the King, and *Khojah Attar*, of his Arrival; and they answered, that as for the Tribute of 15,000 *Xeraphines*, they were ready to pay it, but would not consent to the building a Fort. He therefore resolved again to besiege the Island, and ordered *Martin Coello*, with his Ship, to guard the Point *Turumbaka*, where the Wells are: *Diego de Melo* was posted opposite to the Island *Keylbom*; he, and *Francisco de Tavora*, before the City. Thence he viewed the Growth of the Fort, for *Khojah Attar* had finished it; making Use of what the *Portugueze* had began, the better to oppose them. The Success was much the same as before. *Diego de Melo*, with eight private Men, were killed, and he in great Danger himself. After this, he returned to *India*, having taken a Ship, that carried much Pearl from *Babrayn*, and *Francisco de Tavora* one of *Mekka*.

^a Original, *Ayaman*

^d A Corruption of *Nezam al Melk*, or *Mulk*.

^b Rather *Yambu*, or *Yembo*, or *Yanbaa*.

SECT. II.

The Soltán of Egypt sends a Fleet against the Portugueze, who are defeated, and Don Lorenzo, the Vice-Roy's Son, slain. The Art of Malek Azz, Lord of Diu.

WHILST this happened at *Ormuz*, the Soltán of *Karo* set out a Fleet of twelve Sail, and fifteen hundred Men, commanded by *Mir Hussayn*, to oppose the *Portugueze* in *India*. By the Way he attacked *Imbo*^b, and killed the Sheikh. The same he did at *Joddah*, and got great Plunder; then sailed to *Diu*, where *Malek Azz*^c, commanded for the King of *Kambaya*, whom he was to join, and treat with, in order to oppose the *Portugueze*. The Timber whereof these Ships were built, was cut in the Mountains of *Dalmatia*, by Procurement of the *Venetians*, (as was said) because the Soltán and *Turk* were at Variance. A Nephew of the Soltán carried it in twenty-five Ships, with eight hundred *Mamluks*, besides Seamen. *Andreo de Amaral*, a *Portugueze*, commanded then the Galleys of *Malta*. He knowing that Timber was designed against his Countrymen in *India*, attacked the twenty five Ships of the Enemy, with six hundred Men in four Galleys, and six Ships; and after a sharp Engagement that lasted three Hours, took seven, and sunk five. The rest fled to *Alexandria*, whence the Timber was carried up the *Nile* to *Kairo*, and thence on Camels, to *Suez*.

Soltán of
Egypt's
Fleet

AT this Time the Vice-Roy *Don Francisco de Almeida*, was upon the Coast of *Malabar*, and had sent his Son *Don Lorenzo*, to guard those of *Kananor* and *Kochin*, and ran as far as *Chaul* with eight Ships. *Chaul* is seated on the Bank of a River, two Leagues from the Sea, one of the chief of that Coast for Greatness and Trade, subject to the *Nizamaluco*^d, by whose Order, *Don Lorenzo* was well received. They had some Intelligence of the Fleet of the Soltán, but gave no Credit to it, till it appeared in Sight, as *Don Lorenzo* was diverting himself ashore with his Officers. They hastened to the Ships, giving such Orders as the Shortness of Time permitted; and were scarce aboard, when the Enemy entered the Harbour with many Demonstrations of Joy: For *Mir Hussayn* thought himself secure of Victory, by surprising the *Portugueze* Ships, and designed to board the Admiral himself. Coming up with *Don Lorenzo*, he poured in Ball, Arrows, Granadoes, and other Fireworks, but was so well answered, that he gave over the Resolution of boarding, though the *Portugueze* Vessel was much

Sent against
the Portugueze

^c Original, *Mulique Azz*.

1508. less than his. The others had no better Success, a
 Almeyda and now Night approaching, gave them Time to
 prepare against next Morning.

The Fleet
 engaged.

As soon as Day appeared, Don Lorenzo gave the Signal of Battle, and, in his Turn, endeavoured to board *Mir Hussyn*. The like was done by the other Captains: But only two Gallies succeeded, which took two of the Enemy, having put all their Men to the Sword. Mean while, the Cannon was furiously played on both Sides, and the *Portuguez* seemed to have the Advantage; when *Malek Azz*, Lord of *Diu*, came with a great Number of small Vessels well manned, to the Assistance of *Mir Hussyn*. Don Lorenzo set two Gallies, and three Caravels, to hinder the Approach of the Relief; which executed their Commission so effectually, that they obliged him to fly to another Place for Shelter. And the Fight continued till Night parted them; each striving to conceal his Loss from the other. The *Portuguez* Captains having met in Council, they judged it rashness to persist in that Enterprize, since *Malek Azz* was so near with such powerful Assistance; and alledged, that it was convenient to take the open Sea, either in order to escape, or to fight with less Disadvantage. Don Lorenzo, remembering the Anger of his Father, for not fighting the Fleet of *Kalekut* in the River of *Dabul*, and fearing his Retreat might be termed a fearful Flight, resolutely expected the Morning; only making some Motion to save the Ships of *Kochin*, that were in great Danger.

The Portuguese
 defeated.

MALEK AZZ, imagining this Motion was in order to fly, launched out from his Retreat, not at all daunted to see many of his Vessels torn in Pieces by the *Portuguez* Cannon, and charged briskly. Unluckily at this Time, Don Lorenzo's Ship running foul of some Stakes that were drove in the River, let in so much Water, that there was no preventing her sinking; though that brave Commander laboured indefatigably, till a Ball broke his Thigh. Then ordering himself to be set against the Main-mast, he stood encouraging his Men, till another Ball broke his Back, and killed him. The Body being thrown beneath Deck, was followed down by *Gato* his Page, who bewailed him with Tears of Blood as well as Water, being shot through the Eye with an Arrow. After a vigorous Resistance, the *Moors* entered the Ship, and found the Page by his Master's Body; who rising, killed as many as covered it, and then died upon them. The Ship sunk at last. Of above a hundred Men that were with Don Lorenzo, only nineteen escaped. In all the Ships were lost a hundred and forty; of the Enemy six hundred. Two other Captains got to *Kochin*,

where the Vice-Roy then was, who received the News of his Son's Death, with a wonderful Resolution.

1508.
 Almeyda,

Art of Ma-
 lek Azz.

Soon after he received a Letter from *Malek Azz*. This Man, born in Slavery, and descended of the heretic *Christians* of *Rossia*, rose by Degrees to the Height he then appeared in. But the principal Action that advanced him was very trivial. It seems, a Kite flying over the King of *Kambaya*, dinged upon his Head, whereat in a Passion he said, I would give all I am worth that Bird were killed. *Malek Azz*, who was an expert Bowman, no sooner heard this, but he let fly an Arrow, which brought down the Kite. The King rewarded this Exploit so bountifully, that the Archer came to be made Lord of *Diu*, a most famous City; which being seated on a triangular Peninsula, joined to the Continent by a very small Isthmus, is commonly reputed an Island. *Malek Azz* endeavoured politically to secure himself at the same Time, both with the King of *Kambaya*, and the *Portuguez*; whose Power he feared, and hated, for the Damage they brought to the Trade of *Diu*. With this View he sent the nineteen Prisoners to the King of *Kambaya*; and then wrote to the Vice-Roy, condoling the Death of his Son, whose Bravery he extolled, and offered to ransom the Prisoners. Endeavouring this Way to appease the Wrath, he knew he had provoked, by assisting *Mir Hussyn*, which was the Cause of all the *Portuguez* Loss.

S E C T. III.

The Vice-Roy sails with a great Fleet. Takes and burns Dabul. Comes before Diu. Defeats the Egyptian Fleet. Makes Chaul tributary. Returns for Portugal. Slain by the Way.

THIS same Year 1508, about the Beginning of April sailed from *Lisbon* seventeen Ships, which being all separated by bad Weather, at length met at *Mozambik*, except one that was cast away on the Islands of *Tristan de Cunna*. These Ships, with those of the foregoing Year, came together to *India*, and raised the Courage of the *Portuguez*. The King had ordered, that Don *Francisco de Almeyda* should resign the Government to *Albuquerque*, and return home in one of the trading Ships: But he suspended the Execution of this Order, under Pretence of being already engaged in taking Revenge of *Mir Hussyn*, and the *Rims* or *Turks*, who had killed his Son. And hereupon arose a Contest, which proving of no Effect, *Albuquerque* offended thereat, went to *Kochin*; and this was the Beginning

Recruit from
 Portugal

This is *Ruffa*.

1509.
Almeyda
The Vice-Roy
sails for Diu

of some Mens protracting the Time of their Command, and others pressing them to quit.

THE Vice-Roy having, after this, dispatched the trading Ships homeward bound, under *Fernando Soares*, and *Ruy de Cunna*, who perished by the Way, sailed the twelfth of *December* from *Kannor* towards *Diu*, in Pursuit of *Mir Hussyn*. He had with him nineteen Vessels of several Sizes, and in them sixteen hundred Soldiers and Seamen, whereof four hundred were *Malabars*. All *India* was alarmed at this Motion of the Vice-Roy, but chiefly the *Samorin*, and *Malek Azz*, who had used all necessary Precautions to secure himself against this Danger. Don *Francisco* being landed with his Officers, in the most delightful Island of *Anchediva*, it was unanimously agreed to sail upon *Dabul*.

Dabul at
sunset

THIS City is one of the most noted on that Coast, by Reason of its Situation, Greatness, and Trade; being seated on a navigable River, two Leagues from the Mouth. The Buildings were then stately, the Inhabitants *Pagans* and *Moors*. It belonged to *Sabay*, King of *Dekan*, in whose Borders it stood, and was provided with a good Garrison, being in Fear of the *Portuguese* Power. Upon Notice of whose Approach, six thousand Men were sent to reinforce them, and new Works raised, planted with Cannon. However, the Inhabitants, on the Vice-Roy's Appearance, began to send away their Goods, which the Governor forbid on Pain of Death; and the more to encourage them, brought his own Wife into the Town. Which Example was followed by many of the principal Men, whose Wives were also at their Country Houses. The thirtieth of *December*, the Fleet entered the Port, and every one strove who should land first. The Works being high, the Shot flew over the *Portuguese*; who having gained the Shore, divided themselves, in order to attack three Gates at once. Which the *Moors* perceiving, made so brave a Resistance at each Place, that the dead Bodies caused a greater Stop than the Defendants or their Works.

Taken and
burnt.

NUNNO VAS PEREYRA, being sent to force Entrance another Way, after a hot Dispute, put the *Moors*, though very numerous, to flight, towards the Mountain; in such Hurry, that by falling one over another, they retarded their own Escape, though pursued by only ten *Portuguese*. In the Fight, which lasted five Hours, fifteen hundred of the Enemy were killed, with the Loss but of sixteen *Portuguese*. The Vice-Roy distributed his Men through the Streets, with Orders to keep Guard, expecting the Enemy's Return: Who accordingly, by the Favour of the Night, stole into the Town, hoping to recover their Wives, Children, and Goods. In

the Morning, the Vice-Roy gave Leave to plunder, which was hindered by the sudden Firing of the Houses, the flames having in a few Hours, reduced the Whole to Ashes. So that the Booty exceeded not a hundred and fifty thousand Ducats. This was done by the Vice-Roy's Order, lest the Men taken up with the Riches of the Place, might retard his other Design. The Ships in the Harbour shared the same Fate. They could get no Provisions hereabouts, because all was destroyed by Multitudes of Locusts, whereof many were found in Pots, preserved by the Natives for Food. The *Portuguese* found them pleasing to the Palate, and not unlike Shrimps, which made them take them for Land Shrimps. Thus in some Places, particularly in the Vineyards about *Rome*, Crabs are found much like those of the Sea.

1509.
Almeyda

THE Vice-Roy in his Passage from *Dabul* to *Diu*, took some Ships with *Moors*, and got Provision for their Ransom. The second of *February*, 1509, he arrived at *Diu*, which appeared high at Sea, encompassed with Walls and Towers, beautiful and strong, populous and well governed; in every Thing resembling the Cities of *Spain*. *Malek Azz*, Lord of the City, was at this Time absent, twenty Leagues off with his Army, against the *Rasbuts*: But had continual Advice of the Motions of the Fleet; which was scarce anchored before the City, when he flew thither, but without any Design either to assist *Mir Hussyn*, or exasperate the Vice-Roy. Don *Almeyda*, in the mean Time, considered the strong Situation of the Place, much improved by Art; as well as the Courage and Conduct of the two *Moors*, assisted with above two hundred Vessels, well manned and provided. Between eight and nine in the Morning, when there was Flood enough for the Ships to swim, the Admiral gave the Signal for entering the Port. Immediately all moved on both Sides with loud Shouts, and Sound of warlike Instruments. The Vessels of *Malek Azz*, ran to oppose the Entrance, showering Bullets and Arrows, which slew ten Men in *Diego Perez's* Galley that led the Way. Yet *Nunno Vaz* pierced forward, and pouring his Shot among the great Ships, sunk one to rights. But being in Danger between two of them, was rescued by *George de Mels*, who, with the other Captains, boarded every one his Ship, while the Vice-Roy, playing his Ordnance in the Midst of the Enemy's Vessels, favoured their Design.

Defeats the
Egyptian
Fleet

At length, the *Paraws* of *Kairkut* fled, spreading the News along the Coast, that the *Rûms*, or *Turks*, were victorious. *Mir Hussyn*, being slightly wounded, in Despair got to Shore in Disguise, and rode to tell the King of *Kambaja* the Falshood of *Malek Azz*, who had assisted him with his Ships, but not his Person. The Absence of *Mir*

Written also *Rasbuts*, *Rasbuts*, and *Rajapûs*.

Hussyn:

1509.
Almeyda

Huffeyn did not discourage those in his Vessels: a For being boarded, they fought without yielding, till they were all slain. A great Ship, belonging to *Malik Azz*, was sunk, and others taken. After which, the Victory being no longer doubtful, the Vice-Roy made up to the remaining Ships, where his Galley, and other lesser Vessels, killed all that leaped into the Sea. So that the Water was turned into Blood. Of the Enemy, above fifteen hundred were slain; and but about forty of the *Portuguese*. The Plunder of the Ships was very rich, and by the great Variety of Volumes, in several Languages, it was judged, the Men were of several Nations. Among these Books, there was some in *Latin, Italian, and Portuguese*. Of all the Vessels that were taken, only four Ships, and two Gallies were preserved, the rest being burned. Our Author, *de Faria*, complains of the barbarous Cruelty with which the Conquered were treated in this Action.

Chaul becomes tributary

NEXT Morning, *Malik Azz*, pretending to be much pleased with the Vice-Roy's Victory, sent *Seyd Ali**, a Moor of *Granada*, to congratulate him. Some of the *Portuguese* Commanders were for pushing their good Fortune, and attacking *Diu*; which the Vice-Roy was against: Because the King of *Kambaya*, to whom the City belonged, was their Friend, the Place strong, and they much weakened; nor could the Town be maintained if taken. Hereupon it was agreed to listen to the Moor, with whom a profitable Peace was settled. He delivering up many captive *Portuguese*, with all the Artillery and Munitions belonging to some Ships of the *Rûms*, which were afterwards burnt. The Vice-Roy, on his Return, arriving at *Chaul*, the King became tributary; and at *Kochin* was received in a triumphant Manner. Here *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, again pressing him to deliver up the Government, he was at the Instigation of others, sent Prisoner to *Kananor*: But Don *Fernando Coutinho*, who arrived soon after with fifteen Sail from *Portugal*, and an extraordinary Power from the King, calling at *Kananor*, carried *Albuquerque* to *Kochin*, where he settled him in the Government of *India*.

Almeyda's Return and Death.

ALMEYDA left *Kochin* with three Ships on the nineteenth of *November*; and having passed the *Cape of Good Hope*, praised God, for that the Witches of *Kochin* were Liars, who said, he should not pass it: But putting into the Bay of *Saldanna*, not far to the North, in order to take in Water, was prevailed on, against his Will, to go ashore to punish the Blacks, for knocking out

the Teeth of one of his Servants, who had deserved that Treatment. There went with him an hundred and fifty, the Flower of the Ships, to a miserable Village, and took some Cattle and Children: Which the Blacks perceiving, one hundred and seventy of them came down from the Mountain, whither they had fled, and attacked them with their sharp-pointed Stakes so furiously, that they soon killed fifty; and among them, the Vice-Roy, who was struck through the Throat. He was sixty Years old, of a graceful Presence, and obliging Carriage; of sound Judgment, liberal and grateful. Don *Francisco* wore the Coat, or upper Garment (which was then used instead of the Cloak at present) black; the Doublet of crimson Sattin, the Sleeves whereof appeared; the Breeches also black, which were Breeches and Stockings, reaching from the Feet to the Waist: Over them Boots, a Truncheon in the Right-hand, and the Left upon his Sword, which hung almost before.

1509
Almeyda

BEEFORE this, in 1508, *Duarte de Lemos*, being made Governor of *Ethiopia*, and *Arabia*, having sailed with a Squadron to *Mozambik* and *Malakka*, set out to Visit *Monfia*, *Zanzibar*, *Pemba*, and other Islands, which neglected to pay the usual Tribute. The first submitted immediately; but the two latter making Resistance, the Inhabitants were driven to the Mountains, and the Towns plundered. *Diego Lopez de Sequerra*, being entrusted with the Discovery of *Madagaskar* and *Malakka*, set out for the latter, calling at *Padir*, and *Pasen*^b. Their Kings sent him Presents, and made great Offers of Friendship. Casting Anchor at *Malakka*, he terrified that Coast with his Cannon. A Boat coming to his Ship, to inquire who they were, he sent Word, there was an Ambassador from the King of *Portugal* to the Sovereign of that Place. The King's Answer was doubtful, as is usual, when their Designs are pernicious; and *Hierom Teixeira*, who was sent as Ambassador, was honourably received, the better to ensnare *Lopez*, who accepted of the King's Invitation, but did not go; being informed, that the Design was to murder him: And in fact the Son of *Utumuti Raja* was sent on board him for that Purpose, but did not effect it. However, while thirty Men were sent to another Place to take in Pepper, by the crafty Directions of the King, the Fleet was suddenly attacked by several Vessels: From which, *Lopez* at last freed himself, sinking several of them; but lost his thirty Men, who were killed in the Town.

Zanzibar and Pemba plundered.

Malakka discovered

* *Seyd*, in *Arabic*, signifies *Lord*; and is the Title of the Chiefs of the Families of *Ali*'s Posterity: The same with the *Spanish* *Cid*. *Pedir* and *Pisang*, as the *English* call them.

1510.
Albuquerque.

CHAP. XI.

The Exploits of Albuquerque, while Vice-Roy of India, from 1510, to 1516.

SECT. I.

*Kalekût burnt. Goa described. It surrenders to Albuquerque. Is deserted by the Portuguese, and retaken by them.*Kalekût at-
tacked and
burnt

ALFONSO DE ALBUQUERQUE now possessed of the Government, prepared, along with *Don Fernando Coutinho*, to sail upon *Kalekût*, where they arrived the second of *January 1510*, with thirty Vessels and eighteen hundred Men, besides Boats of *Malabars*, who followed in Hopes of Plunder. Every one strove to land first. *Coutinho* had eight hundred Men, and some Field Pieces: *Albuquerque* had the same Number, besides six hundred *Malabars*. They marched with more Confusion than Order, each striving to be foremost. Six hundred Men, in the Bulwark of *Seram*, made a vigorous Resistance, till *Albuquerque* coming up, they quitted it. *Coutinho*, upon this, marched forward to the Palace of the *Samorin*, which was five Leagues from the Shore; where being arrived, much fatigued, his Men fell to plundering, without Shame or Order: But in the Interim, the Enemy being reinforced, returned, and fell upon the *Portuguese*, killing many under their Burthens. *Albuquerque* having, by this Time, entered and fired the City, marched toward *Coutinho*, who had sent to him, being in imminent Danger. He found him blocked up in the Palace: Nor could he assist him, being hindered by the Multitude of the Enemy, who slew many of his Men; and wounded him with a Dart in the Throat, and a Stone in the Head, so grievously, that he was carried senseless to the Shore. By this Time, *Coutinho*, and several more, were slain in the Palace; besides many on the Way, who were oppressed by Numbers, spent with Labour and Heat, or stifled with the Dust. They had doubtless all perished, if two thousand Men, left in the City, had not come up in Time, and obliged the Enemy to retire. They lost, in all, eighty Men.

Albuquerque
in Great
Danger.

ALBUQUERQUE, upon his Return to *Kochin*, made Preparations for a third Attempt up-

^a *Shâh Nafr addin*: This was the Surname of *Mahmûd*, who was famous for his Conquests in *India*. He was the sixth King of a Dynast of *Turks* from *Persia*, who founded the Kingdom of *Dehli* or *Delli*, in 1202, or rather usurped it from the Family of *Ghaur*, as they had conquered it about 1155, from that of *Ghâzm*, which had subdued all *India* as far as the *Ganges* in 1001. *Mahmûd Shâh* began his Reign in 1236. (See *D'Herbelot Art Deheli*, p. 189 & *Gen. Hist. of the Turks, Mogols, and Tartars*, vol. 2. p. 755) So that the Conquests spoken of in the Text must have happened before the Year 1300.

^c It should be *Kufa Adel Khân*. *Adel Khân* signifies the King of Justice; and is only a Title. ^d These Names are strangely corrupted by the *Portuguese*, as well as the Princes not well distinguished. For only three were very considerable: *Nizam Shâh*, *Kotb*, or *Kotb Shâh*, and *Adel Shâh*. The first (who is the same with *Nizamaluco*, or rather *Nizam al Mulk*) had *Vizapur*; the second, (the same with *Cotamaluco*) *Golkonda*; and the third, *Bij-nagar*. See *Thevenot's Travels*, part 3. p. 91. Others place *Adel Khân* in *Vizapur*, and give *Nizam al Mulk* all the Country from *Guzerat* to *Bengâl*. See *Fryer's Travels*, p. 165 & *seqq.* For *Shâh*, some put *Khân*, or *Princes*.

a on the Island of *Ormûz*. About the End of *January*, he sailed from thence with seventeen hundred Men, in twenty-one Vessels of several Sizes. Calling in at *Onor*, he changed his Design, by Advice of the Pirate *Timoja*, and went to attack *Goa*, in whose Port he anchored the twenty-fifth of *February*.

1510.
Albuquerque.

TIKUARI is an Island on the Coast of *Kanara*, formed by two Mouths of the River *Gafim*. Its Length from East to West, three Leagues; the Breadth, one. It consists of Hill and Plain, has good Water, is very fruitful, pleasant, beautiful, and healthy. On the North Side of this Island is seated *Goa*, which formerly was on the South. The City now in being, was built by *Malek Huseyn*, a *Moor*, forty Years before the Arrival of the *Portuguese*. 'Tis not known when the old was founded. But Mention is made in some Writings of *Montrajat*, King thereof, above one hundred Years before.

ABOUT the Year 1300, the *Moors* began to conquer *India*. The first that attempted it with great Power, was *Xa Nosradin*^a, King of *Delli*. With a powerful Army he came down from the North, conquering all the *Gentiles* as far as the Kingdom of *Kanara*. Thence he returned to *Delli*, leaving *Habed Shâh* to prosecute the Conquests; who by his Valour and Conduct, became so great, that he coped with his Master. His Nephew *Madura*^b, prosecuting what his Uncle had began, possessed himself of the Kingdom of *Kanara*, and casting off his Allegiance to *Shâh Nafr addin*, called the Kingdom, *Dekan*, from the sundry Nations, with which he conquered it, this Word importing so much in that Language. So great an Empire always threatneth Ruin. *Mahmûd Shâh*, fearing this, used great Industry to secure himself, which he did for a Time; but at length, several Governors, entrusted with the Command of different Provinces, erected them into Sovereignties, [imprisoning their King at *Beder Capital of Dekan*].

THE greatest of these was he of *Goa*, when the *Portuguese* entered *India*, called *Sah y*, who died about the Time of *Albuquerque's* Design upon that City; which *Kufa*, King of *Hidalcán*^c, had taken Possession of, and put into the Hands of his Son *Ismail*. The other Princes were *Nizamaluco*, *Mudra Maluco*, *Melic Verido*, *Coja Mazadan*, *Abexupado*, and *Kotamaluco*^d, all great

Shahy Adel
Khân.^b Mistook doubtless for *Mahmud Shâh*.

1510.
Albuquerque.



Goa attack-
ed, Surren-
ders.

Princes, [and Foreigners, except *Nizamaluco*] *Sabay* was born at *Saba* ^a a City of *Persia*, of very mean Extraction; but served the King of *Dekan* so fortunately, that he gave him the City *Kilberga*. Thence he extended his Conquest over the *Gentiles* of *Bijnagar*, and afterwards took the Island of *Goa*, (which, not long before, had been seized by the *Moors*, who came from *Onor*): *Malak Hussayn*, who was then Lord of it, and defended it with twelve hundred Men, being killed in the Attack. *Goa* had several Dependencies, with which, and others he had conquered, *Sabay* became the most powerful of those Princes; against whom he maintained himself while he lived: But his Death produced great Alteration.

ALBUQUERQUE having sent his Nephew *Don Antonio de Noronna*, and *Timoja*, to found the River on whose Bank *Goa* is seated, found a Fort well furnished with Guns, and four hundred Men; which they attacked and took, after a stout Resistance, made by the Commander *Yazu Gorsj*, a valiant *Turk*. This Man flying to the City, *Timoja* took another Bulwark with thirty Men: Next Day, as *Albuquerque* entered the River, he was met by *Mr Ali*, and other chief Persons of the City, who came to surrender it; on Conditions, that their Lives, Liberties, and Estates, should be secured. This unexpected Surrender was owing to the Terror which seized them, on the Report *Yazu* made of what he had seen a few *Portuguese* do, and to the Prediction of a *Joghi*, (one of their religious Men) who not long before had declared, that Place should soon be subject to Strangers. Such are the fatal Effects of Superstition! The seventeenth of *February*, *Albuquerque* was received ashore as if he had been their natural Prince; and, mounting a Horse, they brought him with rich Furniture, at the Gate received the Keys, and went on to the Palace built by *Sabay*: From whence he dispatched Embassies to divers Princes.

Refused and
deserted
again.

FOUR Months after, the *Moors* in the Town, who had delivered it up so easily, only to avoid their own Ruin, and gain Time, till Relief came, revolted. *Ismael Hidalcan* [*Adil Khan*] set out with a great Power, to assist the Revolters, sending before his great General *Camalcam* [*Kamel Khan*] with fifteen hundred Horse, and eight thousand Foot. *Albuquerque* having seized and put to Death the Heads of the Conspiracy, prepared the best he could for his Defence. However, *Kamel Khan*, with some Loss, entered the Island, and encamped about the City, (whither all the *Portuguese* retired) playing his Cannon to good Effect. *Albuquerque* did all that could be expected from him; but *Adel Khan* coming up with sixty thousand Men, whereof five thousand were

^a Hence called *Sabay*; which, according to the *Arabic* Idiom, signifies any Person or Thing, coming from or belonging to *Saba*.

a Horse, it was resolved in Council, to abandon the City in the Night. This was executed with great Hazard. For *Adel Khan* had begun to cut off their Retreat to the Ships, in which *Albuquerque* had his Horse killed; yet got off, without Loss, after a Siege of twenty Days.

1510.
Albuquerque.



THE same Year, 1510, *Albuquerque*, being reinforced by Ships from *Portugal*, set out from *Kananor* with twenty-three Sail, and fifteen hundred fighting Men. At *Onor* he landed, to be present at *Timoja's* Wedding, who married the Daughter of a Queen; and sent with him three Ships, promising to join him at *Goa*, with six thousand Men. November the twenty-second, the Vice-Roy anchored a second Time before that City, and at Break of Day assaulted it, with great Slaughter; the *Portuguese* entering with the Enemy, who fled, and doing great Execution in the Streets. The Fight was furiously renewed at the Palace, with great Danger to the *Portuguese*. But *Albuquerque* coming up, the *Moors* abandoned the City; and endeavouring to get over to the Continent, through Haste and Confusion, perished in the River. Out of nine thousand who defended the Town, six thousand were destroyed, and but fifty *Portuguese*. The Booty of Horses, Artillery, Provisions, and Ships, was excessive. Not one *Moor* was left alive in the Island: But the *Gentiles* were restored to their Farms, and the Government of them given to *Timoja*, who came not till the City was taken. After this, *Albuquerque* received Ambassadors, with Congratulations from several Princes of *Malabar*; and laid the Foundation of a Fort, which he called *Manuel*, after the King. He also coined Silver and Copper Money; his Intention being to make *Goa* the *Portuguese* Bulwark in *India*. Having left four hundred *Portuguese* for the Defence of it, and five thousand *Gentiles*, under *Melrau*, Nephew to the King of *Onor*, to secure the Country, and Revenue, he returned to *Kochin*; where, under Pretence of going against the City of *Aden*, in *Arabia*, (according to the King's Instructions) he prepared for the Conquest of *Malakka*.

Attacked a
second Time
and taken.

SECT. II.

Malakka described. Is attacked by the King of Siam. Taken by Albuquerque. Utimuti Raja and his Son executed.

THE City of *Malakka* is situated on that Part of Land commonly called the *Auria Kher-fonesus*, or *Golden Peninsula*; and about the Middle of the Channel, which parts the Island of *Sumatra* from the Continent. It lies in somewhat more than two Degrees of North Latitude, stretched along the Shore about a League in the

Malakka
described.

1511. same Manner as *Lisbon*. It is divided by a River, and the two Parts joined by a Bridge. The Buildings are of Wood, except the Moske and Palace, which were of Stone. It afforded a pleasant Prospect to the Sea, and was well secured with Fortifications. The Port was filled with Abundance of Ships, as being the great Market of all those Parts. It was first built by the *Se-lates*, a People for the most part employed in Fishing; who joined themselves to the *Malays*, that before inhabited the Mountains. They were assisted by *Parisamora*, to whom they submitted. This had been a considerable Person in the Island of *Java*: But being expelled by a Tyrant, who usurped his Lordship, he fled to *Sin-capura*, and was well entertained by the King; against whom, however, he rebelled, and was again cast out by the King of *Siam*, and so forced to wander about *Malakka*: A just Punishment for his Ingratitude. Yet having increased the new Colony, he gave it the Name of his own Fortune; for *Malakka*, in the *Malayan* Language, signifies a banished Man. The first King of *Malakka*, was *Xaque Darxa*^a, (or, as another Author says, *Raal Sabu*) Son of *Paramisora*, subject to him of *Siam*; from whom his Successors revolted. The Country of *Malakka* is subject to Inundations, full of thick Woods, stored with hurtful and dangerous Creatures, chiefly Tigers, which obliges many People to pass the Nights on the Tops of high Trees; because they fetch them off the low ones with a Leap. The Men are courageous, the Women wanton. The Trade of the East and West make *Malakka* most rich and populous.

Malakka
extracted by
the King of
Siam

MOHAMMED reigned at this Time, against whom the King of *Siam* had sent an Army of 40,000 Men; most whereof perished by sundry Accidents, and partly by the Treachery which that King practised against *Diego Lopez de Siqueira*: But now came *Albuquerque* to revenge them all. *Mohammed* feared the Reward of his Baseness, and therefore brought to his Aid the King of *Pahang*^b, with a great Force; and had now 30,000 Men, and 8000 Pieces of Cannon. The second of *May*, 1511, *Albuquerque* set out from *Kochin*, for *Malakka*, with nineteen Sail, and 1400 fighting Men; 800 of them *Portuguese*, the rest *Malabars*. In the Way they took five Ships of the *Moors*, bound for *Malakka*, off of *Ceylan*. Being arrived on the Coast of *Sumatra*, the Kings of *Padir*, and *Pazem*^c, sent some *Moors* to visit him. *Neboada Beghea*, who had a chief Hand in the Treachery of *Malakka*, being taken at Sea, to the Astonishment of all, shed not one Drop of Blood, tho' pierced with several mortal Wounds; but a Bracelet of

a Bone being taken off his Arm, he bled plentifully. The *Indians*, who discovered the Secret, said it was the Bone of a Beast that breeds in *Java*. It was esteemed a great Prize, and brought to *Albuquerque*. Next they met a Vessel with 300 *Moors*, so resolute, that *Albuquerque* was forced to come up himself to take it, not without Danger.

THE first of *July* the Fleet anchored in the Port of *Malakka*, and terrified the crowded Shore with the Noise of warlike Instruments and Cannon. Next Day a gallant *Moor* came from the King to tell the Vice-Roy, that if he came for Merchandize, it was ready. The Messenger was received with great State and Courtesy. The Answer was, that the Merchandize he sought for was some *Portuguese*, left there by *Siqueira*, and that having gotten them, he would let the King know his farther Demands. Being terrified with this Answer, it was agreed to buy off the Danger, by restoring the *Portuguese*, and paying a Sum of Money. But Prince *Aladin* [*Ala'ddin*] his Brother-in-Law, the King of *Pahang*, hindered it. Whereupon *Albuquerque* began some military Execution, which obliged the King to restore the Captives, and send other Messengers. To which the Vice-Roy returned for Answer, that he offered him Peace upon Condition he permitted him instantly to raise a Fort there, and repay'd the Charge of his and *Sequeira* coming to that Port; since his Falshood had been the Cause of all the Damage sustained; and that he must immediately return an Answer, whether he chose Peace or War. The King desired an Accommodation, but his Son and Brother-in-Law opposed it.

THE twenty-fourth of *July*, the Vice-Roy landed his Men: The hottest of the Dispute was about gaining of the Bridge; which was defended by the Prince, and King of *Pahang*. King *Mohammed* came there also himself on a bulky Elephant, with two more carrying Castles on their Backs; whence flew Showers of Darts. But the Beasts, being wounded, fled; and, trampling down their own Men, made way for the rest of the *Portuguese* to join those at the Bridge, where *Albuquerque* then fortified himself: However his Men being faint, through Heat and want of Food, towards Night he retired with them to the Ships, where ten died of poisoned Arrows. The Enemy's Loss was not owned. The King of *Pahang* went away on Pretence of bringing a Recruit, but returned no more. Mean while King *Mohammed* was busied in undermining the Streets, and covering them with poisoned Thorns; being industrious also to secure the Bridge. *Albuquerque* sent *Antonio de Abreu*, in a

1511

Albuquerque

Albuquerque

Attacks and
taku the Ca-
ry.

^a Sheikh *Dar-shah*.
No L. I. N° IV.

^b Or *Paban*, in the Original, *Pam*.
L

^c *Pedier* and *Pisang*.
Vessel

1511. Vessel well manned, to gain it: He passed thro' a Showers of Bullets, and though desperately wounded, would not be brought off. Then Floats of Wildfire were drove along the River to burn his Ship; which was prevented by *Albuquerque's* gaining the Bridge, who then entered the City, through Showers of Bullets, Arrows, and Darts. Avoiding the Mines in the broad Street, he gained the Mosk; and at last, with great Slaughter of the Enemy, got Possession of the City; having with him, in this Action, only 800 *Portuguese*, and 200 *Malabars*.

New people In nine Days Time, all the *Moors* were killed, or driven out of that great City, which was peopled again by Strangers and some *Malayans*; to whom Leave was granted. Among them came *Utumuti Raja*, that powerful Native of *Java*, whose Son had like to have killed *Sequeira*. The Soldiers had three Days Liberty to plunder. There were found 3000 Pieces of great Cannon, out of 8000, that King *Mohammed* relied upon; who, with the rest, retired to *Bin-tam* [*Brintang*] where he and Prince *Ala'ddin* fortified themselves; but *Albuquerque* sending thither 400 of his Men, along with 400 of *Utumuti Raja's*, and 300 belonging to the Merchants of *Pegu*; they put the Prince to Flight, and took seven Elephants with costly Trappings. *Mohammed*, who now wandered in the Woods with his Son, whose Obstinacy he blamed, they fell at Variance, and parted. *Albuquerque* instantly built a Fort at *Malakka* (which, for its Beauty, he called *Hermosa*) and a Church. He also coined Money, as he had done at *Goa*, of different Species; and scattered some among the People: By which, and other commendable Actions, he gained the Hearts of the Strangers, and secured this most important Place.

First public Execution.

ALBUQUERQUE knowing it is sometimes convenient to trust an Enemy, gave the Command of the *Moors* in the City to *Utumuti Raja*: But discovering, that he corresponded with Prince *Ala'ddin*, on Pretence to restore him, but, in Reality, to set up himself, he, his Son, and Son-in-Law, were apprehended; and (after Conviction) publickly executed on the Scaffold they had erected for *Sequeira*. This was the first Piece of public Justice, executed by the *Portuguese* in *India*. Two other Princes went about by Artifice to possess *Malakka*, but did not succeed. *Albuquerque* received here several Embassies, particularly one from the King of *Siam*, who rejoiced to see his Quarrel revenged. He also sent Ambassadors to *Siam* and *Pegu*, with

two Persons to discover the Islands of *Malukko* and *Banda*. Then leaving 300 Men in the *Albuquerque* Fort, and ten Ships to guard the Sea, he returned towards *Kochin*. In the Way, his Ship on the Coast of *Sumatra*, set upon a Rock, which split it so athwart the Keel, that those in the Poop could not come at them in the Forecastle. In this Danger he remained all Night; and at Day-break was seen holding a Girl in his Arms, whom Chance had led to him in the Confusion. While he was on this Expedition, *Goa* was besieged by 20,000 of *Adel Khan's* Men, encouraged by some Natives within: But the Vice-Roy arriving with several Fleets at the same Time, from different Parts, the Siege was raised. Hereupon the King of *Kalekut* concluded a Peace, with Liberty to build a Fort. And those of *Narvinga*, *Bisa*, *Adel Khan*, and other Princes, sent Ambassadors to him: There came also one from *Prester John*, in order to go to *Portugal*.

S E C T. III.

Expedition against Aden. Red-Sea first entered by the Portuguese. Hormuz surrenders. Albuquerque dies. His Character.

THE eighteenth of February, 1513, *Albuquerque* set out for the Conquest of *Aden*, with twenty Ships, manned with 1700 *Portuguese*, besides 800 *Kanarins* and *Malabars*.

THE City of *Aden* is seated near the Coast of *Arabia Felix*, and the Mouth of the *Red-Sea*. Over it appears the Mountain *Arziza*, all a barren Rock, divided in many Cliffs. The Town from the Sea, looks beautiful and strong. It is rich and famous for the great Resort of many Nations: But Water is so scarce, it depends only upon a few Wells and Cisterns; nor do the Clouds supply them above once in three Years: Whence it is void of all Trees, Plants and Orchards, the Delight and Pleasure of other Towns.

THEY attempted to take this Town by scaling the Walls. But the Ladders breaking several Times, they were obliged to retire in four Days with Loss; after taking a Bulwark which guarded the Port, with thirty-nine great Pieces of Cannon, and burning the Ships which were first plundered.

FROM thence they failed to the *Red-Sea*, being the first *Portuguese* who had entered it.

They took four rich Ships at the Island of *Kamarian*, where they were obliged to winter. In July they departed, and coming again before *Aden*,

* These two Persons were *Lopez de Azevedo*, and *Antonio de Abreu*, who set out in 1511, and returned in 1513, according to *De Faria*: But according to *Argensola* and others, they were *Antonio de Abreu*, *Francisco Serrano*, and *Ferdinando Magallanes*, who in this Voyage, first projected his Circumnavigation.

^b Perhaps *Fisapora*. ^c That is, from the Emperor of *Abassia*, or the *Abissini*, then mistaken for *Prester John*.

found

1514.
Albuquerque

found it newly fortified; so that after exchanging a few Shot, the Vice-Roy failed for India. In August he anchored off *Diu*, demanding of *Malék Azz* Leave to build a Fort. *Malék* managed him with great Address, referring him to the King of *Kambaya*; who granted that Liberty, on Condition that he might build another at *Malakka*.

Malakka attacked by Javans.

MEAN while *Malakka* was in great Danger of being taken by *Pati Quitet*, who at last was obliged to fly to *Java*, his native Country, from whence *Pati Unuz*, Lord of the City *Japara* (after King of *Sunda*) sailed with a Fleet of ninety Ships, some as large as Gallions, with 12,000 Men to fall upon *Malakka*. He had been seven Years making this Preparation, and kept Intelligence with the *Javans* in that City: But *Fernando Perez*, with seventeen Ships, 350 Portuguese, and some Natives, after two furious Engagements, put *Unuz* to Flight in his greatest Ship; for which a Merchant of *Malakka* offered 10,000 Ducats, in case it was taken. The *Javans* from this Time were banished for ever out of the Place; which soon after *Mohammed*, its late King, endeavoured to surprize by Stratagem, and was very near succeeding.

Hormiz's Surrender.

THE twentieth of February, 1514, *Albuquerque* resolving to attack *Harmúz*, or *Ormúz*, set out with a Fleet of twenty-seven Sail, wherein were 1500 Portuguese, besides 600 *Malabars*, and *Kanúrens*. Coming to Anchor in the Port the twenty-sixth of March, there presently came aboard a Visit, and Presents from the King. The Vice-Roy sent to demand the Delivery of the Fort he had began there; and that some principal Men should be sent with the Instrument of the Submission made of that Kingdom, by King *Sayf addin*. Every thing was consented to, because there was no Power to resist. *Ræz* (or *Reis*) *Núr addin*, the Governor, with his Nephew, came to ratify all; and was sent back with rich Presents for themselves, and a valuable Collar of Gold for the King. Public Rejoicing was made on both Sides for this Agreement. After which, *Albuquerque* went on with building the Fort, near which, on a Scaffold, he received an Ambassador, that came from *Ismael* King of *Persia*; with Presents consisting of Ounces, Brocards, Precious Stones, Jewels of Gold and Silks. The Treaty was concluded with mutual Satisfaction.

1515. BEFORE the Coming of the Vice-Roy, *Ræz Hamet* was sent from *Persia* to *Ormúz*, with a Design to secure it, and deliver it up to *Ismael*. He had got the entire Ascendant of the King, and had brought People secretly into the City to kill him, when there was a favourable Opportunity. *Albuquerque*, to deliver *Seyf addin*, proposed an Interview with him, when *Hamet* entering foremost rudely, and being known to be secretly armed, the Vice-Roy ordered his Officers to kill him. While the Fort was finishing, *Albuquerque* persuaded the King, that it was for the Safety of the City, to put all its Cannon into the Fort Which with some Reluctancy he consented to; and the Command thereof was given to *Peter de Albuquerque*. Thus was this rich and powerful Kingdom brought under Subjection to the Portuguese.

1515. Albuquerque's Death.

Soon after, the Vice-Roy falling sick, was persuaded to return to *India*, for Recovery of his Health. In the Way meeting with News that a new Governor was come from *Portugal*, with Orders for him to return home, he broke out into some Complaint, after which he was seized with a profound Melancholy, and died upon the Bar of *Goa*, the sixteenth of December, 1515, in the sixty-third Year of his Age. He was second Son to *Gonzalo de Albuquerque*, Lord of *Villa verde*, and of *Donna Leonora de Menezes*, Daughter of *Alvaro Gonzales de Atayde*, first Count of *Atougua*. He had been Master of the Horse to King *John* the Second. Of a moderate Stature; his Countenance pleasing, and venerable by the Beard, that reached below his Girdle, to which he wore it knotted; that and his Complexion very white. His Picture shews his Breeches, Doublet, Cloak, Cap and Coif all black, with gold Trimming; the Waistcoat striped with green Velvet, strewed with small Spots, like Studs: It was doubted whether he was a better Man or Officer. When angry, his Looks somewhat terrible; when merry, pleasant and witty. He was twice before *Ormúz*, twice before *Goa*, and twice before *Malakka*, three famous Islands and Kingdoms in *Asia*, whereof he gloriously triumphed. He was the first Governor of *India*, as his Predecessor was the first Vice-Roy.

To finish the Character of this great Man, it may not be amiss to insert what our Author hath written in another Place. The Dominion of

^a Perhaps rather *Reis Ahmed*. *Reis* or *Rais* signifies a Chief. and is given to Sea Captains or Commanders.

^b He is known by the Indian *Mohammedans* by the Name only of *Maland*; because, according to them, he came from the Parts about *Melinda*, which they call *Moland*. See *Teixeira's History of Persia*, p. 416.

^c Some of his Actions reproach him with great Severity; if not Cruelty: Which no Reasons of War can possibly justify; or, we think, constrain a good Man to be guilty of.

^d See *De Faria's Preface* to the second Volume of his *Portuguese Asia*.

1516.
Soarez.

the *Portugueze* in *Asia* was founded in three, viz. *Duarte Pacheco*, *Don Francisco de Almeyda*, and *Alonso de Albuquerque*. Scarce had they one Successor who did not manifestly decline, or at least had a Mixture of Valour and Timorishness, of Moderation and Covetousness, wherein the Vices were predominant. Let an unbiaſſed Judgment here reflect upon the Exploits of the *Portugueze* in gaining this *Asiatic* Crown, and it will appear, that only *Pacheco* could have forged it with that fiery Heat, which melted the Arms and Riches of the obstinate *Samorin*, that only *Almeyda* could have filed and polished it, by applying his own and his Son's Sword, which brought it into Form, by humbling the *Turkish* Pride, and that only the great *Albuquerque* giving the finishing Strokes, could have set in it the most precious Jewels of *Goa*, *Malakka* and *Ormúz*. For they entering with a few ordinary Ships, and a most inconsiderable Number of Men into such far distant Regions, where they were surrounded by numerous Squadrons, and opposed by strong fortified Places, without any Friends to assist them, or scarce a Tree to give them Shelter, must have lost the very Hopes of returning to their native Country: Yet, by their undaunted Bravery, they rushed through Showers of heavy Ball and poisoned Arrows; and, by the Force of their Arms, opened deep Trenches, raised high Walls, and took Possession of stately Cities and spacious Territories.

CHAP. XII.

A brief Account of the Portugueze Transactions in India, from 1516 to 1521, under the Government of Lope Soarez.

SECT. I.

Portugueze Power at the Height. Soarez duped at Aden. Goes in Quest of Ræz Solimân. Baffled before Joddah. Kolumbo Tributary. Peace with Siam and Pegu. A merry Passage.

Portugueze
Power at the
Height.

THE great *Alonso de Albuquerque* being dead, *Lope Soarez de Albergaria* took the Government. He brought with him to *India* a Fleet of thirteen Ships, and in them 1500 Men. As *Almeyda* laid the Foundation of the *Portugueze* Power in *India*, *Albuquerque* established it, and seems to have brought it to its Height: For after his Death, their Affairs declined every Day, through the Pride and Avarice of the Governors and o-

ther Officers; and instead of extending their Conquests, they were mostly employed in defending what they had gotten. Till this Time (says our Author *De Faria y Sousa*) The Gentlemen had followed the Dictates of true Honour, esteeming their Arms the greatest Riches. From this Time forward, they so wholly gave up themselves to Trading, that those who had been Captains, became Merchants. Thus what had been Command, became a Shame, Honour was a Scandal, and Reputation a Reproach.

1516
Soarez.

THE Governor, according to the King's Order, prepared for the *Red-Sea*; and being informed that the Soltân of *Egypt* was fitting out a great Fleet at *Suez*, he sailed in Search thereof from *Goa*, upon the eighth of *February*, 1516, with twenty-seven Sail of several Sorts. He carried with him 2200 *Portugueze*, and 1600 *Malabars*; one half Soldiers, the other half Seamen. Coming before *Aden*, *Miramurzan* finding himself defenceless, (by reason a Piece of the Wall was beaten down by *Ræz Solimân*, Admiral of the *Suez* Fleet) made a Virtue of Necessity, and offered the Keys to *Lope Soarez*: Who, pleased with this Flattery, trusted to him, and took not Possession of the City; intending to do it at his Return. Hearing that *Solimân*, by Strefs of Weather, was driven to *Jodda*, and had no Defence, he resolved to sail thither, up the *Red-Sea*.

JODDA, or as the *Arabs* call it, *Jidda*, is situated in *Arabia Felix*, in twenty one Degrees, thirty Minutes North, in a most barren Soil, being all a deep Sand. The Buildings are good, but not the Harbour. The Inhabitants are of two Sorts, the native *Arabs*, and foreign Merchants. *Mir Hussyn*, after his Defeat at *Diu*, by *Almeyda*, being afraid to return to *Egypt*, fortified this Town for his own Security, under Pretence of securing *Mohammed's* Sepulchre at *Mekka**. Mean while *Ræz Soleymân*, a Turk, of base Parentage, but a powerful and bold Pirate, born in *Mitylene*, an Island in the *Archipelago*, offered himself to [*Kanfu algaurs*, (corruptly called *Kampson Gaurus*) Soltân of *Egypt*] to command the Fleet, of twenty-seven Sail, that was preparing at *Suez*, to fall upon *Aden*; an Employ which *Mir Hussyn* had set his Heart upon, and was accepted of. After repairing the Loss that was sustained at *Aden* (where many of his Men were killed) and taking a great Booty in the City of *Zeybid*, he returned to *Jiddah*, where he slew *Mir Hussyn*, and then delivered the Place up to *Selim*, the *Turkish* Soltân: Who not long before had possessed himself of *Egypt*; and put an End to the Dominion of the *Mamlûks* [by the Defeat

Seeks Rd.
Solimân.

* This must be a Mistake, for the Sepulchre is at *Medinab*, eleven Stages distant. But *Mekkah* might be worth defending, as being the holy City, and famous for sacred Places; in particular the Temple, in which is the *Kaba*, whereto the *Mohammedans* make their Pilgrimages, and turn their Faces when they say their Prayers.

1516. of *Tumân Bey*, (or *Tommbaius*) the Successor to *Kanfü al Gauri*.]

Soarez
Baffled before
Joddah.

THE Port being dangerous, *Lope Soarez* anchored a League from the City, in which there was so good Cannon, that three or four Pieces reached the Ships at that Distance. *Solimân* proposed a private Combat between Man and Man, but the Governor would not permit it, saying, he would answer ashore. The City was terrified by the firing a Galleon, while the Governor founded the Channel that goes up to it. *Soleymân* appeared the Tumult, and appeared with some Men without the Walls, while Multitudes appeared on them, braving the *Portugueze* with loud Cries; who seeing that *Lope Soarez* neglected landing, began to complain of the Delay. He appeased them by shewing his Instructions; which were not to attack the City, but the Fleet. And not being able to effect this, he retired to the Island of *Kamarân*. From hence, after suffering much by Famine, and losing seventeen Men, taken by the *Moors*, he went to *Zeyla*, a City at the Mouth of the *Red-Sea*, on the *African* Shore, and the great Market of those Parts; which being unprovided, was easily taken and burnt. When he came to *Aden*, the Wall being now repaired, *Minaairzan* refused to deliver the Place, by forming Delays. Being thus baffled, he sailed for *Barbora*, designing to do at that City what he had done at *Zeyla*; but the Fleet being scattered by Storms, and 800 Men lost, the Attempt was deferred till next Year, when it was taken without Resistance, and burned.

Goa and
Malakka 17
Danger.

MEAN Time great Disorders reigned at *Goa*, which at last brought on a short Siege. The same Misfortune attended *Malakka*, through the ill Government of *George de Brito*, and Animosities of others; whose tyrannical Treatment made the Inhabitants fly, and brought the late King with a considerable Force to recover it: So that had not *Don Alexio de Meneses* come with 300 Men, the *Portugueze* Possession there had been at an End. After which the King of *Siam*, who hated the *Moors*, sent *Siamese*, at the Request of a *Portugueze* Ambassador, to people *Malakka*, which now became secure.

Kolambo
Tributary.

THE Island of *Ceylon*, (called by the antient Inhabitants *Ilanaré*, and by the *Arabs* and *Persians*, *Serandib**) lies opposite to Cape *Komoré*, the Southern Point of the hither Peninsula of *India*; from whence it is distant about sixteen Leagues, and is supposed once to have joined to it. It is divided into nine Kingdoms; *Kolombo*, on the West; *Gala*, on the South; *Jaula*, *Tanavaka*, *Kanlé*, *Batehalon*, *Vilafem*, *Trinquamalé*, and *Jasanapatam*. The *Portugueze* had a Trade with *Kolambo*, the King whereof desired their

a Friendship, and furnished them with Cinnamon, from the Time of *Albuquerque*. Hither *Lope Soarez* sailed next, in 1517, with seventeen Vessels, great and small, and 700 *Portugueze* Soldiers; with Design to oblige the King to pay Tribute, and consent to the building a Fort, as King *Manuel* desired. After a small Contest, in which the Islanders, assisted by the *Moors*, were put to Flight, the King yielded to be a Subject to *Portugal* Paying yearly 1200 Quintals of Cinnamon, twelve Rings of Rubies and Saphires, with six Elephants; Commodities with which *Ceylon* abounds. Soon after the King of *Pam*, near *Malakka*, voluntarily became Tributary to the Crown of *Portugal*, paying a golden Cup yearly.

1519.
Soarez.

DUARTE COELLO having settled a Peace with the King of *Siam*, then one of the three greatest Princes of *Asia* (those of *China* and *Bifnagar* being the other two) *Fernan Perez de Andrada* arrived the same Year (1517) after many Difficulties at *Quan tong* (or *Kanton*) in *China*, where he settled a Trade on that Coast, and returned laden with Riches to *Malakka*. Whence, in 1518, he went with *Don Meneses* to *Kochin*: But was no sooner gone, than the King of *Bintang* (who waited that Opportunity, though he had concluded a Peace just before) attacked the City, where there were but 200 *Portugueze*, with 1500 Men, many Elephants by Land, and sixty Vessels by Sea. After twenty Days he raised the Siege, with the Loss of 330 Men, and eighteen *Portugueze*, and lay to hinder Provisions getting in to relieve the Town. But retired on the Arrival of *Garcia de Sa*, with sixty Men. Thither also came *Antonio Correa*, in 1519, from *Martaban*, where he had been concluding a Peace with the King of *Bagau* (corruptly called *Pegu*) at which assisted the Priests of both Nations.

Peace to
Siam and
Pegu

THE *Gentile* Priest was called the *Great Raw-Mary Pajelin*; who, after the Capitulations (made in the golden Mine, as is the Custom of those People) were read, began to read in a Book, and then taking some yellow Paper, (a Colour dedicated to their holy Uses) with some sweet Leaves of Trees, inscribed with certain Characters, set Fire to it all; and holding the Hands of the King's Minister over the Altar, spoke some Words, which rendered the Oath inviolable. On this Occasion there happened a merry Passage: For *Correa*, to answer this Solemnity, having ordered his Priest to put on a Surplice, and bring his Breviary; the Cover was so tattered, and the Leaves torn, that thinking it scandalous their sacred Books should appear in such bad Plight, he directed instead of it a Book of Church Music to be brought: Which being bigger, and better bound, passed among

* Or rather *Selan div*, that is, the Island of *Selan*.

1521. those People, says *De Faria*, as well as if it had been the Gospel.

Soarez

SECT. II.

Expeditions to Diu and Bintang fruitless. Molokko Islands. Brito sent to build a Fort there. The Spaniards arrive by the South-West Passage, found out by Magallanes

Expeditions
to Diu,

DIEGO LOPEZ DE SEQUEYRA, Governor of *India*, after *Lope Soarez*, having treated with *Malek azz*, to erect a Fort at *Diu*, and being put off with Delays, resolved to compass it by Force. For this Purpose he gathered forty Vessels of all Sorts, and in them 3000 *Portuguese*, with 800 *Malabars* and *Kanarins*: The greatest Fleet of theirs that had ever been seen in those Seas. But coming before it, the ninth of *February*, 1520-21; and finding it had been fortified and retrenched, in a surprizing Manner, as well as reinforced with a strong Garrison, it was agreed in a Council of War by all the Officers who assisted, not to attack it. Tho' afterwards they charged their own Cowardise on him; and thus this great Preparation came to nothing. To as little Purpose was the Expedition of *George de Albuquerque*, Governor of *Malakka*, with eighteen Sail, and 600 Men, against the King of *Bintang*. This is an Island forty Leagues in Circumference, and as many distant from *Malakka*. It was well fortified, having two strong Castles, and the Rivers flanked; so that it seemed almost inaccessible. *Albuquerque* finding it impossible for the Ships to come up, landed his Men in Boats, to attack a Fort; but the Water being up to their Middles, and the Enemies Shot very thick, they were forced to retire without doing any Execution, many of their Men being wounded, and twenty slain.

And Bintang

Molukko
Islands described.

From this Place *Antonio de Brito* sailed for the *Molukko* Islands; which are in the midst of many others under the Line, about 300 Leagues Eastward of *Malakka*. The principal of them are five, *Ternate*, *Tidor*, *Mouzel*, *Maquien*, and *Bachan*, about twenty-five Leagues from each other; and the biggest nor more than six Leagues in Circumference. These five produce Cloves, but no manner of Food: And the Island *Batochina*, another of them, sixty Leagues in Length, yields Provision, but no Cloves. In some there are flaming Mountains, chiefly in *Ternate*. The Inhabitants are not great Lovers of Flesh, though there is Plenty, as well as of Fish, which they like better: But their chief Sustainance is Meal made of the Bark of Trees resembling Palms; from which and others, they are supplied with

Wine and Vinegar. There grows also a Sort of Canes; which, in the Hollow, have a Liquor delightful to drink. They are not affable, but warlike, and exceeding swift both in running and swimming. There is no Account of their Origin: They are in Religion Idolaters. These Islands were not long before possessed by the *Moors*; ever since whose first Coming, there was still living an old Commander, when *Brito* arrived.

1521

Soarez

To these Islands, and particularly *Ternate*, *Brito* was sent to build a Fort; which long since *Boleyse*, the King thereof, had desired. Others had gone before, but to no Effect: As *Antonio de Abreu* (in the Time of *Albuquerque*) who, losing one of his three Ships, arrived at *Banda*, (the chief of the five of that Name) which is like an earthly Paradise; and one of its chief Ornaments the Plant that produces the Clove. From thence he returned to *Malakka*: But his other Captain, *Francisco Serram*, was driven to *Ternate*; where he staid waiting for the Dispute to be decided, which arose among the Kings of that Island, *Tidore* and *Bachan*; each striving to have the Fort built in his own Island. A very odd Contest for sovereign Princes!

When *Brito* arrived at *Ternate*, King *Boleyse* was dead, and he of *Tidore* had admitted the *Spaniards*. Thinking himself, with very good Reason, as happy in them, as *Ternate* could be in the *Portuguese*. Yet observing, that the Queen of *Ternate* (who was Governess to her Son) received *Brito* joyfully, the King paid him a Visit; and finding him displeased, on account of the new Guests he had entertained, offered to deliver them up. This he thought would prevail on *Brito* to build the Fort at *Tidore*: But *Ternate* being found to be the more convenient Place, it was at length erected there.

The Arrival of the *Spaniards* was in this Manner. While *Serram* (or *Serrano*) was at *Ternate*, a Correspondence was held between him and *Ferdinando Magallanes* (or *Magellan*) which turned to the Advantage of *Spain*, and Trouble of *Portugal*. This Gentleman, who was a Person of great Merit, by his Skill in Sea Affairs, and the Light he obtained from *Serram*, guessed there might be found another Way to *India*; and even wrote his Friend Word, that he hoped to be with him soon at *Ternate*, by a new Rout. In effect having been denied in *Portugal*, the Reward due to his Services, he went over to the Emperor *Charles V.* and offered to bring the *Spaniards* to the *Molukkos*, a Way by the West; at a Time when they began to have a hankering after the Spice Trade. His Offer was readily accepted,

Brito sent
to build a
Fort.

The Spaniards arrive
by the South-
West Pass-
age.

Found out by
Magallanes.

* The first arrived here the eighth of *November*, 1521, in the famous Ship *Victory*, belonging to the Fleet sent out with *Magallanes*.

1521. and the Command of five Ships given him, with a condemned to Death, as Spies: But the Sentence being respited, they were sent back Prisoners to *Quan tong*, to be released, in case the Portuguese restored *Malakka* to its King, who was a Subject of *China*; otherwise they should be punished, and none of their Nation ever admitted, or treated but as Enemies. The Portuguese instead of reclaiming, agreed to act more insolently; which so exasperated the Governor of *Quan tong*, that he secured several of them, and contrived to take some Ships newly arrived from *Malakka*. They began to act, when *Duarte Coelho* arriving with two Vessels from *Malakka*, well manned, he was attacked by the *Hay-tau*, or Admiral of that Sea, with fifty Sail; who being repulsed, kept them besieged forty Days. Mean Time two Ships more arriving, it was resolved to force their Way through the *Hay-tau's* Fleet, and get off.

THE *Hay-tau* revenged this Disaster upon some of the Portuguese who arrived there, and the Ambassador *Perez*; who being returned with his Company to *Quan tong*, they were all slain, and the Effects of *Perez*, together with the Present he brought for the Emperor, seized. This Man was of base Parentage, and, by Trade, an Apothecary; though chosen for the Embassy, on Account of his good Parts. There was found with him, 2000 Weight of Rhubarb, 1600 Pieces of Damask, 400 of other Silks, above 100 Ounces of Gold, and 2000 of Silver, three quarters of a hundred of loose Musk, and above 300 Purfes of it, at first called *Papos*, and much other Merchandize. This shews how great was the Return of the *Quan tong* Trade.

THE same Year, 1521. the Islands *Bahrayn* and *Katif* were conquered from *Mokrin*, King of *Lasah*; who held them of the King of *Ormúz*, but refused to pay the Tribute. In 1522, the Portuguese were attacked at *Ormúz*, *Bahrayn*, *Maskât*, *Kuriat*, and *Soar* (or *Sohâr*) at once. The King of *Ormúz* despairing of Success, retires to *Keyshom*, after setting the City on Fire: But being murdered by his Favburites, his Successor, only fifteen Years of Age, is prevailed on, by the Portuguese, to return to *Ormúz*, on Condition that they should not meddle with the Government of the City.

THIS Year also the Country about *Goa*, which had belonged to *Adel Khân*, was recovered by him. The King of *Achen* attacking them in *Sumatra*, they abandon the Fort of *Paseng*. Things went ill with them also at *Malakka* and the *Malukkas*. In 1525. the Fort of *Kalekât* being attacked by the *Samorin*, with considerable Force, the Portuguese demolished it, and withdrew.

IN 1526. *Hector de Silveira* destroyed *Dofâr*, (or *Dhafâr*) a strong City on the Coast of *Arabia*; and entering the *Red-Sea*, reduced the Islands *Mazua* and

1521. and the Command of five Ships given him, with 250 Men, some of them Portuguese. As his Voyage will be given at large in another Place, we shall only observe here, that he left *Spain* in September, 1519; and sailing through the *Streights*, to the South of *America*, that bear his Name, passed over the great *Pacific Sea*, which divides that Continent from *Asia*, and came among the *East-Indian* Islands; in one whereof he was killed in Fight, in April 1521. *Gonzalo Gomez de Espinosa*, in the Ship *Victory*, arrived at the *Molukko*, and was received by the King of *Tidor*, in Matred to the Portuguese, and those of *Ternate*, on the Account above mentioned. *Espinosa* returned to *Spain*, by Way of *Panamâ*, and left the abovementioned Command of the Ship to *Juan Sabastian del Cano*. Who, having loaded her with Spices, pursued his Course the Way the Portuguese take, by the *Cape of Good Hope*; being the first who performed that wonderful Voyage round the World. Their Arrival raised new Contests between the Emperor and King *John the Third*, of *Portugal*. Who, by the former Agreement, concluded the *Malukkas* belonged to him; and that no other European Prince would offer to interfere in the Trade thereof. Of this Dispute, and its Issue, a particular Account will be given hereafter.

C H A P. XIII.

Transactions and Discoveries of the Portuguese, from 1521, to 1537.

S E C T. I.

Portuguese Arragance. Celebes and Borneo discovered. Several Cities taken and destroyed. A Portuguese sacrificed.

Portuguese Arragance. **FERNAN PEREZ DE ANDRADA** having secured the Trade of *China*, at *Quan tong*, which proved exceeding profitable; his Brother *Simon*, in 1521, obtained Leave to sail thither with five Ships. When he came to the Island *Ta mû*, opposite to that City, *Thomas Perez*, the Portuguese Ambassador to the *Chinese* Court, was still there; but soon after departed for *Nanking*, being four Months on the Way. He followed the Emperor to *Peking*, where he was to have received his Audience. Mean Time *Simon de Andrada*, through Pride and Conceit, behaved as if he had been King of the Island. He raised a Fort, and set up a Gallows to terrify the People; committed Violence upon the Merchants, and bought young People of both Sexes, without the usual Precautions; giving Occasion to Kidnappers to steal them from their Parents.

THESE Things coming to the Emperor's Ears, *Perez* (instead of being received as an Ambassador) and his Attendants, were seized and

1526. Soarez.

Arcl slain at Quan tong.

Bahrayn subdued.

Lost in India.

Their Ambassador seized.

1527. and *Dalaka*. They discover the Island of *Celebes*. *Kalay* and *Maskat*, exasperated by the Avarice of *Diego de Melo*, revolted, but were reduced again.

RAEZ SOLIMAN, the Turk, who killed *Min Hufsey*, at *Jiddah*, having recovered his Prince's Favour, by delivering up the City, and sending a Present, Soltán *Solimán*, the Successor of *Selim*, sent *Haydarin**, from *Suez*, with a Fleet of twenty Gallies, and five Galliots, to deliver to *Raez Solimán*, who was then fortifying the Island of *Kamarán*, in the *Red-Sea*: Where *Haydarin*, on some Disgust, killed him. *Mustáfa* Nephew to *Raez*, succeeded him, and slew *Haydarin*. After which he fled with a few Ships, first to *Aden*, and then to *Diu*, for Protection. Thus this Expedition designed against the *Portuguese* miscarried. *Antonio Teneyro* went by Land with the News to King *John*; being the first who performed that Journey, till then thought impossible.

MALAKKA being infested by the King of *Bintang*, *Pedro Mascarenas*, with twenty-one Ships and 1000 Men, 600 of them *Malayans*, sailed to that Island; and attacking the Capital, which was well fortified and defended by 7000 Men, entered it, slew 400, and took 2000 Prisoners, a vast Booty, and 300 Pieces of Cannon, with the Loss of only three *Portuguese*. One of the most glorious Actions they performed in *Asia*. The King was restored on becoming Tributary.

IN the *Molukkos*, Don *Garcia Enriquez* burnt *Tidore*, after making Peace with the King; and went to expel the *Spaniards* out of Port *Kamafu*, and another Town in that Island, but were repulsed. Don *George de Menezes*, in his Way to the *Molukkos*, discovered the Island of *Borneo*. Having sent a Present of Tapestry to the King; that Prince, on beholding the Figures, cried out, *They were Men enchanted, and would kill him in the Night*; and, in spite of all that could be said, would neither suffer the Tapestry to remain in his Palace, nor the Messengers in the Port. At *Tidore* the *Portuguese* were worsted by the *Spaniards*.

IN 1527. some *Portuguese*, after the Loss of their Ships, getting in the Boat to *Chakuria* in *Bengal*; the *Indians* having made a Vow to sacrifice to their Idols, the handsomest *Portuguese* they should take; it was the Lot of *Gonzalo Vaz de Melo* to fall the Victim. A Fleet being sent to burn the *Turkish* Gallies left at *Kamarán*, they could not get to them, the Winds proving contrary: However they burnt the City of *Zeyla*, on the Coast of *Adel*; which Fate *Mangalor*, on the Coast of *India*, underwent also. At *Diu* seventeen *Portuguese* being taken in a Boat, *Die-*

go de Mesquita, their Captain, for refusing to turn *Mohammedan*, was ordered by the King of *Kambaya*, to be blown in Pieces out of a Cannon: But that Prince, admiring the Resolution with which *Mesquita* entered the Mouth of it, was appeased, and spared him. *Chatua* near *Krangannor*, and *Porka*, were burnt by *Lope Vaz*, the Governor of *India*; *Marabia* and Mount *Delli*, by his Nephew *Simon de Melo*.

S E C T. II.

*Spaniards subdued at Tidore. Execrable Cruelty of de Menezes. Several Cities burned. * Worthy Action of Silveyra.*

THE King of *Kambaya's* Fleet of eighty Barks, were all but seven taken or destroyed by the brave *Hector de Silveyra*, who soon after in 1529, took *Bazaim*, and made *Tana* Tributary. Don *George de Menezes*, with the People of *Ternate*, fell upon those of *Tidore*, and the *Spaniards*, whom they defeated, burning the City, and then besieging the Fort. The *Spaniards* surrendered, obliging themselves to retire to *Kamafu*; not to commit Hostilities against the *Portuguese*, or their Friends; nor to go to any of the Clove Islands. The King of *Tidore* was made Tributary, and compelled not to aid the *Spaniards*.

AFTER this Don *George* became of a sudden most wicked and outrageous. Suspecting that *Kachil Vaydeka*, a *Tidore* Nobleman, had killed a *Chinese* Sow of his, he anointed his Face with Bacon (which is the most heinous Injury that can be offered a *Mohammedan*.) In the Town of *Tabona*, he took the chief Magistrate, and two *Moors* of Note. The Hands of these last he cut off; and, on the first, set two Dogs, who tore his Flesh till, to shun them, he ran into the Sea; where, being pursued, he defended himself with his Teeth, till at last he was drowned, almost worried to Death. Another *Kachil* endeavouring to stir up the People, to drive out both *Portuguese* and *Spaniards*, Don *George* seized and beheaded him publicly in *Ternate*; which so terrified the People, that most of them, with the Queen herself, fled from the City.

NUNNO DE CUNNA in his Way to *In-Mombassa* this Year, took, plundered and burnt *Mombassa*; then sailing to *Ormúz*, seiz'd *Raez Ashraf*, the King's Wazir or Visier, and sent him to *Portugal*, for Mal-practices. He was there joined by *Belchior Tavares de Sousa*, who had been to assist the King of *Bafrab*, with forty Men against him of *Fazirat*, an Island [as the Name imports] about forty Leagues in Compass, made by the *Euphrates* and *Tigris*. He being the first

* Or *Hayraddin*.

1532. *Portuguese*, who had penetrated those Rivers from a from that City. *Diego de Silveira*, in 1532, burnt
De Cunna. the *Persian Gulf*. After this, he was sent to re- 1532
duce *Babrayn*, which had revolted, and battered Patam, twelve Leagues from *Diu*, *Pate*, *Man-*
the Fort; but withdrew, for Want of Ammunition. galor, and other Towns, striking an universal
De Cunna. Terror along the Coast, and carrying off infinite
Riches.

Sur.t. and
other Parts
burned. IN 1530, *Antonio de Silveira*, who was station-
ed on the Coast of *Kambaya* with fifty-one Sail of sets out again with a hundred and fifty Sail, three
Vessels, went up the River *Tapti*, and burnt thousand *Portuguese*, and two hundred *Kanâras*,
Surât and *Reyner*, two Cities on its different Sides. to attack *Basaim*, which was then fortifying by
The first, four Leagues from the River's Mouth, *Malek Tokam*, Lord of *Diu*, who, on the *Port-*
contained 10,000 Families, mostly *Banians*. The b *uguese* Approach, left a Garison of twelve thou-
other, which stood a little higher, 6000 Houses, sand Men. However, the *Portuguese* attacked
inhabited by warlike *Moors*, and well fortified. the Place, put the Garison to Flight, killed six
Afterwards he burnt *Daman* and *Agazem*, two hundred of them, razed the Fort, and carried
other Cities on the same Coast. off above four hundred Pieces of Cannon. After
this, *Manoel de Albuquerque*, burnt all the Towns
along the Coast, from *Basaim* to *Tarapor*, and
obliged *Tana*, *Bandora*, *May*, and *Bombaim*, to pay
Tribute.

Aden and
Shael tribu-
tary. *HECTOR DE SYLVEIRA*, being sent to
the Mouth of the *Red-Sea*, with ten Ships, and
six hundred Men, by spreading his Fleet took se-
veral rich Prizes. After which, sailing to *Aden*,
he managed the King with such Dexterity, that
he consented to pay an annual Tribute of 12,000 c
Xerapins. In the same Manner did the King of
Xael (or *Shael*) submit.

Diu attempt-
ed. IN 1531, *Nunno de Cunna*, then Governor of
India, set out for *Diu*, with above four hundred
Sail, mostly small Vessels, in which were 3600
Soldiers, and 1450 Sailors, all *Portuguese*; besides
above 2000 *Malabars* and *Kanârans*, 8000 Slaves
fit for Service, and almost 5000 Seamen. They
attacked the Island of *Beth*, seven Leagues from
Diu, strongly fortified both by Nature and Art, d
and defended by two thousand resolute *Arabs*,
Turks, and others: Of whom eighteen thousand
were killed, and sixty Cannon taken, with the Loss
of only twelve *Portuguese*; among whom was the
brave *Hector de Silveira*. The Stay before this
Place lost them *Diu*; which, in the Interim, was

Its Strength. reinforced by *Mustâfa*, a *Turk*. The City was sur-
rounded with Rocks and Water; and the Mouth of
the River crossed with Chains, defended by thirty
armed Vessels. Within were 10,000 Men, and
an infinite Number of Cannon. After making
an Attack, which lasted all Day, without doing
the Enemy much Hurt, *de Cunna*, who exposed
himself the whole Action in a Boat, withdrew.
Badur, King of *Kambaya*, rewarded *Mustâfa* with
the Government of *Baroche*, and Title of *Rûmi*
(because he was a *Grecian*) and *Khân*: So that he
was thenceforward, called *Rûmi Khân*.

C. 1 on the
Coast burned. *ANTONIO DE SALDANNA*, who was
left in the Sea of *Diu* with sixty Sail, and fifteen
hundred Men to do Mischief, burnt the Towns of
Madresabâd, *Goga*, *Belsa*, *Tarapor*, *May*, *Kelme*,
Agasim, and last, *Surât*, just rising out of the
Ruins of the last Fire. The Cruizers, having
taken twenty-seven Ships of the King of *Kalekût*,
richly laden, the *Samorin* to obtain Peace, gave
Leave to build a Fort at *Chale*, three Leagues

VOL. I. N° 4.

DE CUNNA encouraged by these Successes, *Basaim*, and
sets out again with a hundred and fifty Sail, three
thousand *Portuguese*, and two hundred *Kanâras*,
to attack *Basaim*, which was then fortifying by
Malek Tokam, Lord of *Diu*, who, on the *Port-*
uguese Approach, left a Garison of twelve thou-
sand Men. However, the *Portuguese* attacked
the Place, put the Garison to Flight, killed six
hundred of them, razed the Fort, and carried
off above four hundred Pieces of Cannon. After
this, *Manoel de Albuquerque*, burnt all the Towns
along the Coast, from *Basaim* to *Tarapor*, and
obliged *Tana*, *Bandora*, *May*, and *Bombaim*, to pay
Tribute.

DIEGO DE SYLVEIRA, meeting near *Wonthy*
Aden, with a very rich Ship of *Jiddah*, the Cap- *tain*
tain came on board, and shewed him a Letter, *of*
given him as a Païs, by a *Portuguese* Prisoner in *Silvey*
that City, wherein were these Words. *I beseech*
such of the King of Portugal's Captains, as shall
meet this Ship, to make Prize of her, for she be-
longs to a very wicked Moor. *Silveyra*, perceiving
how the *Mohammedan* was imposed upon, took
no Notice of the Deceit, but discharged him;
choosing rather, says *de Faria*, to lose the Riches
of that Ship, than bring into Question the Sincer-
ity of the *Portuguese*. This is mentioned here,
to shew, that in the most corrupt State of a Peo-
ple, there are some noble Spirits to be found.

SECT. III.

Merry Cruelty. Fort raised at Diu. Surprising
Adventure of Botello. Disorders at the Molokkos.

c *MALEK TOKAM*, Lord of *Diu*, finding *Overture*
King *Badur* designed to confer the Govern- *about Diu.*
ment of that City on *Mustâfa Rûmi Khân*, was
inclined to give Leave to build a Fort there; yet
still afraid, trifled, and at last was obliged to fly on
Badur's Approach. *Badur* also himself, pretend-
ed a Willingness to consent; whereupon *de Cunna*
went to *Diu*, with one hundred Sail of Ships, and
had an Interview, which not taking Effect, he
struck up a League with *Humâyûn Padishâh*, the
great Mogul, and returned to *Goa*. Here we
cannot forbear relating the merry Cruelty at *Kum*
ali Markar, a bold Pirate at *Kalekût*, who rang-
ing about, found a Brigantine one Night, with
eighteen *Portuguese*, and three Gunners on board,
all so fast asleep, that they were bound before they
knew of it. Having awaked them, he caused
their Heads to be bruised to Pieces, saying, *It was*

M

to

1534 *to punish them, for daring to sleep, knowing he was a*
De Cunna *abroad.*

Bazain yielded for ever.
IN 1534, *Martin Alfonso* took the Fort of *Daman*; and *Badur*, to procure Peace, gave up for ever, to the King of *Portugal*, *Basaim*, with its Dependances by Sea and Land. It was likewise agreed, that all Ships bound for the *Red-Sea* from *Kambaya*, should set out from that Port, and return thither to pay the Duties, that none should go to other Places, without Leave from the *Portuguese*, and that no Ships of War should be built in any of his Ports.

League with Badur
BADUR, King of *Kambaya*, who had by Force or Treachery, added two other Kingdoms to his own, was become very powerful, when *Humáyún*, the great Mogol, his Neighbour to the North, falling out with him in 1534, took from him good Part of his Dominions, with *Champanel*, his Capital City. These Misfortunes moved *Badur*, to apply to *de Cunna* for Assistance, offering Leave on that Condition, to erect a Fort at *Diu*. *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* upon this, went to *Diu*, to settle the Articles Which were, that *Badur* should confirm all that had been done, relating to *Basaim*, that there should be a League offensive and defensive, between the King of *Portugal* and him; that the Fort should be raised where, and in what Manner, the Governor should appoint, and that a Bulwark towards the Sea, should be immediately delivered to him.

Fort built at Diu.
DE CUNNA, being sent for at *Badur's* Desire, repaid to *Diu*, and was received with much Honour, and Demonstration of Joy. He immediately set about the Fort, which was soon finished, and the Command of it given to *Emanuel de Sousa*, with nine hundred *Portuguese*, and sixty Pieces of great Cannon. *Humáyún*, despairing of taking *Diu*, employed his Arms elsewhere

Surprising Adventure.
THE Liberty of building this Fort, produced an Adventure, as surprising as that Grant was important. *James Botello*, a Person skilful in the Affairs of *India*, having been in Disgrace with King *John*, for designing (as it was reported) to go for *France*; and being anxious to recover that Prince's Favour, resolved to effect it by a most desperate, and almost incredible Attempt. He knowing how earnestly the King desired to have a Fort raised at *Diu*, the Liberty for building it was scarce granted, when, getting a Copy of it, and a Draught of the Fort, he committed himself to the vast Ocean, which is between *India* and *Spain*, in a Bark, that was but sixteen Foot and a half long, nine broad, and four and a half deep; setting out privately with his own Slaves, three *Portuguese*, and two others. He pretended he was going to *Kambaya*: But as soon as he was out at Sea, discovered his Design, at which they

were all astonished, as well they might. But being overcome by fair Words and Promises, they proceeded on their Way, till finding themselves reduced to unspeakable Miseries, the Slaves, who were Sailors, agreed to kill him; but after killing a Servant, were all killed themselves. Without Seamen or Pilot, *Botello* held on his Course, with the four who remained, and, to the Admiration of all Men, at length arrived at *Lisbon*. Where the Bark was immediately burnt, that nobody might see it was possible to perform that Voyage in so small a Vessel. The King was greatly pleased with the News, and *Botello* restored to the Royal Favour, without any other Reward for this prodigious Action.

DE CUNNA, fearing the Mogol would fall on *Basaim*, sent to its Relief *Garcia de Sa*, with four hundred *Portuguese*. He seeing the City threatned with a mighty Army, resolved to quit it. But moved by the Cries of the Inhabitants, and yet more by the Persuasions of *Antonio Galvam*, he began to fortify the Place; whereupon *Humáyún* withdrew.

MEAN Time, the King of *Achen*, by Craft, decoyed and slew several *Portuguese* at different Times. At the *Molokkas*, all Things were in Confusion, through the Avarice and Tyranny of the Governors. *Gonzalo Pereyra*, succeeded *D. George de Meneses* at *Ternate*, in 1530, but was murdered, because he intended to examine into the Frauds of his Countrymen. These put in his Room one *Fonseca*, who pursuing the former evil Measures, *de Cunna* sent in his Place, *Tristan de Atayde*, more vile than *Fonseca*. He imprisoned the King of *Ternate*, and his Mother. Whereupon the People fled, nor when they lamented, were pitied by their Neighbours, who upbraided them (they are the Words of the *Portuguese* Historian) for admitting so wicked a People as the *Portuguese*, who, since they had Footing in that Island, were guilty of the most enormous Villanies, that could be imagined. *Tristan*, to engross the Clove Trade, quarrelled with the King of *Bachang*; and assisted by those of *Ternate* and *Tidore*, took and burned his City. Yet these and other Kings, at the same Time, conspiring to extirpate the *Portuguese*, they were all cut off in *Ternate*; and *Tristan* almost starved out of the Fort there, for Want of Provisions.

AZADA KHAN, (General of *Ibrahim*, *Adel* *Khán*) having ravaged the Country in the Neighbourhood of *Goa* in 1536, the Inhabitants surrendered it to *de Cunna*, who accepted of it. Soon after, those Lands being invaded by *Seleymán Aga*, a Turk, another of the *Adel Khán's* Generals, he was opposed by *D. Juan Pereyra*, who built a Fort at *Rachol*, in Spite of him. Afterwards, he defeated

1536.

De Cunna.

Bazain

relieved

Despatched

at Melaka

Goa

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

Island

Portuguese

1537. ed him at *Margam**, and *Azada Khán*, at *Ponda*, a De Cunna, which Town was burned. This last Commander, enraged hereat, built the Fort *Borí* (on the River of that Name) opposite to that of *Rachol*, which was therefore demolished by the *Portugueze*.

Ripelin burned. AFTER this, the King of *Kalekit*'s Forces were defeated near *Kranganer*; and *Ripelin* taken and burned. Here was recovered a Piece of Marble, highly valued by the King of *Kochín*, (from whence it had been plundered) because thereon were cut the Names of the Kings of *Malabar*, for three thousand Years past.

C H A P. XIV.

Continuation of Portuguese Transactions and Discoveries, from 1537, to 1542.

S E C T. I

Badur, King of Kambaya, invites the Turks against the Portugueze. Is slain by the latter. A Man three hundred Years old. Portugueze Villanies, severely punished.

Badur's Treachery. **B**ADUR, King of *Kambaya*, having served his Ends of the *Portugueze*, wanted to get rid of them: For this Purpose, he sent to invite the *Turks* to assist him. Mean Time he contrived, not only to take the Fort and destroy the Garison, but *de Cunna* also, sending for him to *Diu* in 1537, where *de Cunna* went; and though apprised of the King's Design, did not secure him at a Visit made on board: But resolved to do it at the Fort. The King putting off in his *Katír*, or Barge, *de Sousa*, who commanded the Fort, followed, to make the Invitation. At the same Time, another Barge coming up, and seeing *de Sousa* in the King's, entered the same hastily; which giving *Badur* a Suspicion, he ordered his Officers to kill *de Sousa*. *Diego de Mesquita*, (who had assisted the King in his late Wars) understanding what he said, flew at, and wounding that Monarch, was slain by his Attendants. Here ensued a bloody Fray, wherein four *Portugueze*, and seven of the Enemy, were slain. Some more Barges on each Side came up: The King, seeing the Danger, began to fly, but was stopped by a Cannon Shot, which killed three of his Rowers. He then thought to escape by swimming, but in Danger of drowning, cried

out, discovering who he was. *Tristan do Payva*, 1537. reached out an Oar to bring him on board. When *de Cunna* a Soldier struck him across the Face with a Halberd, and then others, till he was killed. He kept a little while above Water, and then sank. And neither his, nor *de Sousa*'s Body, could be found.

DE CUNNA entered *Diu*, and by his discreet Behaviour, reconciled the Inhabitants, who began to quit the City. The Gold and Silver found in the Palace, did not exceed 200,000 *Par-daws*. But the Quantity of Ammunition was to be admired. In the Port, were one hundred and sixty Vessels, some of great Bulk. No less wonderful was the Number of Brass Cannon, (not to mention those of Iron) among the rest were found three Basilisks, of such a prodigious Size, that *de Cunna* sent one, as a Rarity, to *Portugal*, which is still kept in the Castle of *St. Julian*, at the Mouth of the River *Lisbon*, and called the Gun of *Diu*.

DE CUNNA found, among the dead King's Papers, Proofs, sufficient to convince the principal *Mohammedan* Merchants, and *Kazi*'s, of *Badur*'s Design, to bring the *Turks* upon the *Portugueze*. And to ingratiate himself the more with the Publick, ordered, that the *Mohammedans* should enjoy the free Exercise of their Religion and Laws, continuing besides all Pensions that had been allowed by the King.

AMONG many, who resorted to receive the Benefit of this Liberality, was a *Moor* of *Bengal*, who by authentic Informations, was found to be three hundred Years of Age^b. He had at this Time two Sons, one ninety, the other twelve Years old. He had renewed his Hair and Teeth four or five Times. He seemed not to be above sixty Years of Age: Was rather short than tall, and neither fat nor lean.

HE pretended, that one Day, while in his first Century, tending his Cattle by a River Side, there appeared to him a Man in grey, girt with a Cord, with Wounds in his Hands and Feet, praying to be carried over on his Shoulders; which having done, the other to reward his Charity, told him, he should continue in the same Habit of Body, till he saw him again. The old Man, going into a *Portugueze* Church, soon after their Arrival in the *Indies*; and seeing the Image of *St. Francis*,

* The *Portugueze* at first gave Way; terrified, says *de Faria*, and others, with strange Fireworks, made by a Witch, who, in Man's Cloaths, sought to revenge the Death of her Husband. Hence, it may be presumed, had they taken this *Amazon*, she would have been treated like another *Juan of Arc*. For we find another martial Female, named *Abcht*, about 1581, put into the Inquisition, tho' not accused of Witchcraft. ^b He lived eighty Years longer, not dying till 1618. This may be true, and that he might have been one hundred and forty Years old in all. The rest is doubtless a fable, and the rather, because *de Faria* in the same Place, vol 3. p. 297 says, that it was reported, there were others two hundred Years old thereabouts. But that on Inquiry, none appeared; only one Woman was found about one hundred Years of Age, who had married that same Year, having before buried seven Husbands. This *Moor* died at *Bengal*.

1537. cried out, with Surprise, *This ! this is the Man a*
De Cunna. I carried over the River so many Years ago. What
 relates to his pretended Age, may easily be sup-
 posed a Fable of the *Indian*; and what relates to
 the Vision, was doubtless a Fable of the *Pianciscans*.
 On Account of the first, he was main-
 tained by *Badur*; and on Account of the latter,
de Cunna continued his Allowance.

THE Beginning of the Year 1538, *de Cunna*
 began that vast Cistern at *Diu*, which is of such
 a Bigness, that being twenty-five Spans deep, b
 each Span contains 1000 Pipes of Water. Thus
 he provided against a long Siege.

Portugueze Villaries. LET's give some Instances of the insufferable
 Arrogance and Ingratitude of the *Portugueze*.
 The King of *Xarl*, (or *Shael*) near *Kashen*, on the
Arabian Coast, having received some *Portugueze*
 kindly in his Port, they requited the Favour
 with Injuries. One of these, among others, had
 robbed a near Relation of the King's; and after
 inflicting several Tortures, hung him, and two c
 other Persons of Note, by the Privities, to make
 them discover their Treasure. *Gonzalo Vaz* com-
 mitted another Robbery. *Alvaro Madera*, being
 kindly entertained by an honest *Moor*, forced his
 Wife from him. One *Godino* had the Honour to
 treat the King at his House, and repaid it, by
 calling him Drunkard. Others took a Ship be-
 longing to his Subjects, and impudently came to
 sell it in his Port.

Severely punished. THE Effect of these Villanies was, that all the d
Portugueze about the Town, were killed by the
Moors, and *D. Manoel de Menezes*, who just then
 arrived as Ambassador from *de Cunna*, with seventy
 Attendants, were made Prisoners, thirty of whom
 were sent as a Present to *Constantinople*: Whence
Madera escaped, and carried the News to *Lisbon*
 of the *Turkish Fleet*, that was fitting out at *Suez*,
 to invade the *Portugueze* in *India*. *Godino* had his
 Head cut off in the King of *Shael's* Presence.

SECT. II.

Affairs of Bengal. Chatigan burned, and Gowro,
 the Capital, taken. Galvam's Bravery. Min-
 danau and Japan discovered.

Affairs of Bengal. DE CUNNA, desirous of having a Fort at
Chatigan in *Bengál*, and being encouraged
 by a rich *Moor*, sent *Martin Alfonso de Melo* thi-
 ther, with a Present for the King *Mohammed* f
Sháh; who, jealous of his Design, secured him,
 and fifty-three more. *Mohammed* was the thir-
 teenth Successor of the *Arab*, who, fifty Years
 before the *Portugueze* entered *India*, usurped the

Kingdom of *Bengal*, by slaying the lawful King. 1537.
 The Capital City *Gowro*, extended three Leagues De Cunna.
 in length along the *Ganges*; and contained one
 Million two hundred thousand Families. *Antonio*
de Silva Menezes, being sent to redeem the Pri-
 soners, and imagining the Messenger also was de-
 tained, because he staid longer than ordinary, he
 burnt *Chatigan*, and other Places. For this they Chatigan,
 were used the harder. But for the Service they burned, and
 did the King against *Shír Khán*, a Mogol Gene- Gowro
 ral who had been well entertained, and was now in taker
 Rebellion, he set them at Liberty. They stopped
Shír Khán's Passage down the *Ganges* at *Gori*, a
 Fort, where that River enters *Bengál*. As soon
 as the *Portugueze* were gone, *Shír Khán* returned,
 and entering *Gowro* by Force, seized the Kingdom;
Mohammed dying of his Wounds in his Way to
 implore *Humayún's* Assistance.

SHIR KHAN, aspiring to farther Conquests, Shír Khán
 took the City *Kalejer* from the *Rasbúts*, with In- killed.
 tent to seize the Treasure of an *Indian Temple*
 there. But pointing a Cannon to kill an Ele-
 phant belonging to that Church, the Gun burst,
 and tore him, with many others, in Pieces. This
 doubtless was looked on as a Judgment by the
Pagans; and may be deemed so, perhaps, by some
Christians; since *Dr. Prideaux*, (in his Con-
 nection of the History of the Old and New Testa-
 ment) actually pronounces the Misfortunes that
 latterly attended *Brennus*, the *Gaul*, after so many
 Victories, to his having plundered the Temple of
Delphos. But sure there could be no Crime in
 plundering Idol Temples, made rich with the
 Spoil of the People, by the rapacious Priests *.

A T *Malakka*, Things were still in great Con- Affair of
 fusion. Don *Stephen de Gama*, destroyed *Ujomtana* Malakka,
 and its Fort, on the River *Tor*; being the South- and the
 East Point of the Coast of *Malakka*, and forty Molokkos.
 Leagues from the City of that Name. In 1537,
 its Bridge was twice attacked by a Commander
 of *Achen*, who was repulsed. The Troubles
 caused at the *Molukkos*, by the Avarice of *Tristan*
de Atayde, were remedied, by sending *Antonio*
Galvam to command, whose Prudence, Modesty,
 and Justice, healed all the Sores made by his
 Predecessors. Understanding that eight Kings
 had entered into Alliance against the *Portugueze*
 at *Tidore*, he went thither with four Ships, one
 hundred and seventy *Portugueze*, and fifty *Moors*,
 pursued by three hundred Sail, with thirty thou-
 sand *Moors*. He anchors at *Tidore*, whose Shores
 were covered with Multitudes; and though the
 Fort appeared impregnable, scales it with one
 hundred and twenty *Portugueze*, and two hun-

* King *John III* of *Portugal*, thought it no Crime: Since he gave *Martin Alfonso de Melo*, Governor of *India*,
 express Orders to rob the Temple of *Trimelé*, near *Melapour* and *Machusi*, though *de Faria* thinks no Pretence
 could justify such a Robbery. *Alfonso* did not effect his Design there. But he plundered other Temples; and
 particularly that of *Tibelikarè*, near *Kahulurum*, in 1544. See *de Faria*, vol. 2. p. 83.

1537. dred and eighty Slaves. The Kings coming on a De Cunna. with fifty thousand Men, he withdraws into a Wood. They thinking he fled, some Parties pursue, and are routed: Some flying to the Fort, he follows, enters with them, and sets it on Fire. The Kings, terrified, fled to the Mountains with their Treasure. Galvam marches to the City, from which the Inhabitants fled, and burns it to the Ground, levelling the Works in such a Manner, that scarce any Sight of the Place was left, but the Ashes.

Exceeded by his Integrity. THIS unparallel'd Victory, which cost but one Slave, produced an honourable Peace. After which, Galvam by his Courtships, and offering to rebuild the City, so much obliged the King and Subjects, that they confided in him as an antient tried Friend. Does not this shew, that all the Wars and Distractions, wherein the Portuguese were concerned, were owing to the Injuries and Injustice offered to the Indians, wherever they came? De Faria says, Galvam found it easier to overcome the greatest Army of Barbarians, than the smallest Tincture of Portuguese Avarice. The People of Ternate, being divided into Parties, about choosing a King, they offered to make Galvam King, till they had one conformable to their Laws. But he refused. Ferdinand de Grijalva, who was cast away, being refused Admittance by the Kings of Gilolo and Bachan, into their Ports, on Account of their League with Galvam, this latter ransomed the Spaniards, and treated them kindly.

Mindanaa discovered. FRANCIS DE CASTRO, sent out with two Priests, was driven, by bad Weather, to Sattigana, and other Islands, one hundred Leagues North of the Molokkos. They discovered also the Island Mindanaa; the Kings, Queens, Nobles, and People, embracing the Romish Religion, wherever they came, to the Wonder of the obstinate Mohammedans, as de Faria calls them. When Galvam's Time of Government expired, those Kings begged to have him continued for Life. He left Ternate in a flourishing Condition, but returned to Portugal involved with Debts; thinking to meet with some Reward for so much Valour, Service, Parts, and Merit. But he found Contempt and Misery, which brought him to die in an Hospital. This, says de Faria, was the Reward those who deserved best, found in Portugal, where heroic Actions were looked upon as Crimes, and Crimes as heroic Actions.

The Fate of Patriots. THIS same Year, 1538, Diu was attacked by Soleymán, Bashá of Egypt, in Conjunction with the King of Kambaya's Forces, both by Sea and Land. This memorable Siege shall be related at the End of Soleymán's Voyage down the Red-Sea to India; as that in the Year 1545, at the End

of Don Juan de Castro's Journal, of the Governor. 1542. D. Stephen de Gama's Voyage up that Sea, in Quest of the Turkish Fleet.

De Faria's Adventures. IN 1540, Peter de Faria, Governor of Malakka, sent his Kinsman, Antonio de Faria y Sousa, to secure a Peace with the King of Patane. He having run along the Coasts of Kamboja, Chamta, Cochinchina, and China, and after meeting with several unaccountable Changes of good and bad Fortune, was one Night swallowed up in the Sea, b Ship and all. But the Adventures told of him are so extravagant, they surpass Belief; and being related chiefly on the Authority of Mendez Pinto, (he should be called Mendax Pinto) whose Book is one continued Chain of monstrous Fictions, deserve no Credit.

IN 1542, Antonio de Mota, Francisco, and Antonio Peixoto, sailing for China, first discovered Japan; being thrown by a Storm on the Island Nipon, called by the Chinese, Je pwen, whence Europeans have formed Japan. And as this is the last and farthest Discovery made by the Portuguese Eastward, we shall here conclude the History of the East India Affairs; only adding an Account of their Possessions to the South-East, and East, with the Commands and Revenues belonging thereto, as they stood in the Year, 1640.

CHAP. XV.

An Account of the Portuguese Possessions, from the Cape of Good Hope to China.

S E C T. I.

Revenue of the Cities, Ports, and Officers. Bishopsricks, and Religious Houses. Botello's surprising Voyage from India to Portugal in an open Boat. Taken from de Faria y Sousa.

THE Portuguese Empire to the Eastward, extends from the Cape of Good Hope in Africa, to Cape Liampo [or Ning Po] in China, four thousand Leagues along the Sea Coasts, without including the Shores of the Red-Sea, and Persian Gulf, which make about twelve hundred Leagues more. Within this Space lies half Africa, and all Asia, with innumerable Islands belonging thereto. These four thousand Leagues are divided into seven Parts.

THE first Division, between the famous Cape of Good Hope, and the Mouth of the Red-Sea, contains along the Coast many Kingdoms of the Kafirs. As the vast one of Monomotapa, whose Monarch is Lord of all the Gold Mines in Africa; those of Sofala, Mozambik, Quiloa, Pemba, Melinda, Pata, Brava, Magadoxa, and many other Sovereignities. Here the Crown of Portugal is pos-

^a Patta, now in the Hands of the Arabs, since 1692.

left of the Forts of *Sofala* and *Mombassa* ^a, and the City and Fort of *Mozambik*.

2^d Division. THE second Division, from the Mouth of the *Red-Sea* to the *Persian Gulf*, contains the Coast of *Arabia*, where they have the impregnable Forts of *Maskat* ^b.

3^d Division. THE third Division, between *Basrah*, or the *Persian Gulf*, and the *Indies*, contains the Kingdoms of *Ormúz*, *Guadel* and *Sinde*, with Part of those of *Persia* and *Kambaya*. Here they hold the Forts of *Bandel*, and *Diu* ^c.

4th Division. THE fourth Division, from the River *Indus* to *Cape Komorin*, contains what is properly called *India*, that is, Part of *Kambaya*, *Dekan*, *Kanára*, and *Malabar*, subject to several Princes. Here they have the Forts of *Duman*, *Affarim*, *Danu*, *St. Gens*, *Agazaim*, *Maim*, *Manora*, *Trapor*, *Bazaim*, with the City *Tana*, *Karanja*, the City *Chaul*, and opposite Fort, called *Morro*. The most noble City *Goa*, large, strong, and populous, the Metropolis of their Eastern Dominions. An Archbishoprick, whose Prelate is Primate of all the East. This is the Residence of the Vice-Roys; and here are the Courts of the Inquisition, Exchequer, and Chancery, a Custom-House, Arsenal, and Magazines well provided. The City is seated in an Island, girt with a strong Wall, and six mighty Castles, called *Daugum*, *St. Blas* of *Bassileco*, *Santiago*, *Agazaim*, *Panguim*, and *Nuestra Señora del Cabo*. On the other Side to secure the Bar, is that of *Bardes*. Opposite to the Castle *Daugum* is the Fort of *Norva*, with a good Town. On one Side of this Island, lies that of *Saljet*, where is the Fort of *Rachol*. Then going along the Coast, they have the Forts of *Onor* ^d, *Barfelor*, *Mangalar*, *Kananor*, *Granganor*, and *Kochin*, which is a Bishoprick; and near *Cape Komorin*, the Town and Fort of *Koulán* ^e.

5th Division. THE fifth Division, lying between *Cape Komorin* and *Ganges*, contains *Keromandel* and *Orissa*, where they have the Fort of *Negapatam*, that of *Meliapor*, with the City which is a Bishoprick, of late called *St. Thomas*, and *Masulapatam*.

6th Division. THE sixth Division, between *Ganges* and *Cape Singapura*, contains the vast Kingdoms of *Bengála*, *Pegu*, *Tanazarim*, and others of less Note. Here they have the City of *Malakka* ^f, a Bishop's Seat, and the last Place possessed by them in the Eastern Continent.

7th Division. THE seventh Division, between the Capes *Singapura* and *Liampo*, [or *Ningpo*] contains the Kingdoms of *Pam*, [or *Pahang*] *Lugor*, *Siam*, *Kambodia*, *Champa*, or *Tiampa*, *Cochinchina*, and the vast Empire of *China*. Here they have no Place

but the City of *Makau*, (in an Island in the Bay of *Kanton*) yet trade all along those Coasts.

IN the Island *Ceylon* [or *Seylan*] they possess ^{In Seylan}, the City and Fort of *Kolumbo*, those of *Manar*, *Gale*, and others ^g. Beyond *Malakka*, a Fort in the Island *Timor*. The Number of their Forts throughout this large Extent, is above fifty; and twenty Cities and Towns, besides many Villages depending on the others.

As to the Revenue, the Customs of *Diu* are ^{Revenue of} worth 100,000 Crowns, those of *Goa*, 160,000; ^{the Cities and} those of *Malakka*, 70,000. The Tribute paid by ^{Forts.} several Places, amounts to 200,000. All which, with Prizes, and other uncertain Profits, will make above a Million. If the Officers (says *de Faria*) had any Honesty, it might amount to two Millions. For there is no doubt but they cheat the King of half his Income, as may appear, by what the Forts are worth to their Commanders.

THE Forts of	Ducats.
<i>Sofala</i>	200000
<i>Mozambik</i>	200000
<i>Mombassa</i>	30000
<i>Maskate</i>	50000
<i>Bandel</i>	2000
<i>Diu</i>	60000
Lesser Fort there . . .	1000
<i>Brankavara Pass</i> . . .	1000
<i>Affarim</i>	4000
<i>Danu</i>	600
<i>St. Gens</i>	600
<i>Agazaim</i>	600
<i>Maim</i>	600
<i>Manora</i>	15000
<i>Trapor</i>	400
<i>Bazaim</i>	30000
<i>Tana</i>	400
Two on that River . . .	2000
<i>Chaul</i>	80000
<i>Goa</i>	20000
<i>Daugum Fort</i>	3000
<i>St. Blas</i>	1000
<i>Agazaim</i>	2000
<i>Bardes</i>	6000
<i>Norva</i>	1500
<i>Rachol</i>	600
<i>Onor</i>	12000
<i>Barfelor</i>	30000
<i>Mangalar</i>	12000
<i>Kananor</i>	15000
<i>Granganor</i>	6000
<i>Kochin</i>	100000
<i>Koulán</i>	12000
<i>Negapatam</i>	8000
<i>Masulapatam</i>	8000

^a *Mombassa* was taken from them by the *Maskat Arabs*, in 1698. ^b They were forced out shamefully by the

Arabs, in 1650. ^c Or *Diu*, that is, Island. ^d Taken last Century by the *Raja* of *Kanára*. ^e *Koulán*,

or *Koulán*, and the four preceding Towns, taken by the *Dutch* about 1663. ^f Taken by the *Dutch*, 1660.

^g All lost to the *Dutch*, about 1658.

<i>Meliaporer St. Thomas</i>	12000	a	which sooner or later must suffer the Fate of the
<i>Malakka</i>	150000		rest.
<i>Columbo</i>	40000		
<i>Manar</i>	24000		
<i>Gale</i>	16000		
<i>Solor</i>	16000		

BESIDES these, there are others of lesser Value. • All of them together may be worth to their Commanders yearly, half a Million. The Value above, is computed for three Years. There are other Employments no less profitable than the Command of Forts, of which Number are the several Voyages. That from *Goa* to *China* and *Japan*, is worth to the Chief Commander 100,000 Crowns; that from *Koromandel* to *Malakka*, 20,000; that from *Goa* to *Mozambik*, 24,000; to *Ceylon*, 4000. These Salaries arise only out of the Freight of Goods; and the Captain makes as much more by Way of Trade.

Vice-Roy's
Salary.

THE Vice-Roy's Salary is 18,000 Crowns, besides the disposing of Places, which are all sold. But the chief Thing which they all look upon, is Trade. For whereas the King gets nothing out of *India*, some Vice-Roys have cleared three, some five, and some 800,000 Ducats. All other Officers have great Salaries, besides their lawful Profits, and their more considerable Frauds. The Salaries (says my Author) are considerable enough to have made Men honest, but Avarice knows no Bounds. Thus much of the Temporal Power, let us come to the Spiritual.

Archbishops

THE Archbishop of *Goa* is Metropolitan, and Primate of all *Asia*. *Kochin* was made a Bishoprick in the Year 1559. *Malakka*, the same Year: *Meliapor*, 1607. The Bishops of *China*, were instituted by Pope *Pius Quintus*. There is also a Bishop of *Japan*, and one of the Mountain, near *St Thomas* of *Meliapor*. There were Bishops of *Persia*, as also Patriarchs of *Ethiopia*. The City *Angamala* is a Bishoprick, as is that of *Makau*, [or *Makau*].

LASTLY, with Regard to the Houses, Churches, and Monasteries of Religions: The *Franciscans* have twenty-two; the *Dominicans*, nine, the *Augustins*, sixteen, the *Jesuits*, about twenty-eight Monasteries, Colleges, and Seminaries, besides a vast Number of Residencies, so called by them, where there are only two or three Priests.

Their Power
impaired

THE foregoing Account may shew how great the Power and Wealth of the *Portugueze* must have been in its flourishing State. But since then, their Possessions have been greatly lessened, by the Acquisitions of the *English* and *Dutch*, which latter, at the Time that State of *India* was published, had taken from them many considerable Places, as they had lost *Ormúz*, long before, to the *Persians*. In short, the only considerable Places they remain possessed of at present, are *Goa* and *Diu*,

SECT. II

An Account of the principal Authors made Use of in this Book, relating to the Portuguese Voyages and Discoveries toward the South-East: Particularly the Asia Portugueza of Manoel de Faria y Sousa.

SEVERAL Authors have written of the first Voyages and Discoveries of the *Portugueze* Eastward, with the Affairs of *India*, particularly *Fernan Lopez de Castaneda*, in eight Volumes; the great *Juan de Barros*, in four Decades; the Bishop *D. Hierome Osorio*, the Jesuit *Maffi*, who did little more than epitomize *Barros*, and *P. Antonio de St Roman*, who translated *Maffi*; *Antonio Galvam*, Governor of *Ternate*, (See p 34) who wrote a brief Account of the Voyages and Discoveries of the *Portugueze* and *Spaniards*. Lastly *Manoel de Faria y Sousa*. This Author, and *Castaneda*, we have chiefly followed in the foregoing Part; supplying them, however, as Occasion required, from other Authors. As we have already given an Account of *Castaneda*'s Performance, there is the same Reason for speaking of *de Faria*'s.

THIS Author, who is a celebrated Historian, has written the Transactions of his Countrymen in the *East Indies*, from their first going there in 1497, to the Year 1640, under the Title of *Asia Portugueza*. It contains all their Voyages and Discoveries from the Coast of *Africa*, to the farthest Parts of *China* and *Japan*, all their Battles by Sea and Land, Expeditions, Sieges, and other memorable Actions. The Whole interspersed with Descriptions of the Countries and Places, that were discovered or visited by them, including an Account of the Customs, Manners, Government, and Religion of the Natives. The Author is remarkable for a concise and pithy Way of relating Things; and for his Reflections on the Conduct of the *Portugueze* Kings, Ministers, and *India* Governors, as well as his Remarks on other Occasions: Which are always just and judicious, excepting where they relate to religious Matters, wherein he generally discovers a surprising Reverse of Character, for Credulity and Weakness, or rather Abuse of Understanding, owing to Education. He has also relied too much on the Veracity of *Mendez Pinto*, a mere Romancer; whose Fictions have injured the Work, and the more, for Want of *de Faria* having distinguished his Authors by References.

AT the End, are added four very short, but curious Articles. 1. A short Account of what the *Portugueze* are possessed of between the *Cape of Good Hope* and *China*, of the several Dignities,

1537.
Soleymán
Bathá

Commands, and Revenues, in the said Possessions, and of the religious Houses in those Parts. This has been inserted above. 2. An Account of all the Ships, that sailed from *Lisbon*, to discover the Coasts of *Africa* and *Asia*, with the annual trading Ships, from the Time Prince *Henry I.* attempted the Discovery, till 1640. 3. A List of the Vice-Roys, and Governors of *India*, from the first Discovery, till 1640. 4. A List of the Authors, from whence the *Portuguese Asia* was collected. The printed Books are in Number, twenty-one, the MSS. thirteen; with a brief Judgment of *de Faria* on each.

Editors of
it.

THIS Work, which is esteemed a very curious and accurate Performance, has gone through several Impressions in *Portugal*. The first was printed at *Lisbon*, in the Year 1666, in three Volumes Folio, with Plans of the chief Places, conquered by them in the *Indies*, and small Heads of the Governors. The next was in 1674. It has been translated also into *Italian*, *French*, and *English*. The *English* Edition was printed at *London*, in 1695, in three Volumes, Octavo; and intitled, *The Portuguese Asia, or, History of the Discovery and Conquest of India by the Portuguese, &c.* The Translator, Captain *John Stephens*, (a Gentleman well skilled in the Languages of *Portugal* and *Spain*) has somewhat contracted the Original, by leaving out some long Speeches, supposed to be made by the Historians, with several Reflections of the Author, and Lists of Officers and Gentlemen present at considerable Actions, which served only to swell the Bulk of the Volumes: But the Translator declares, as to the rest, that he has not omitted the most inconsiderable Passage, or lessened any material Circumstance. It could be wished, it had been printed more correctly, on Account of the infinite Number of proper Names, which are full of typographical Faults.

CHAP. XVI.

The Voyage of Soleymán Bathá, from Suez to India, in his Expedition against the Portuguese at Diu, in 1537.

Written by an Officer of the Venetian Gallies, (who was pressed into the Turkish Service) and now first translated from the Italian.

Previous Remarks on this and the following Voyage.

Editors of
this Voyage.

THERE are two Copies to be met with of the following Voyage. The first is published, with other Tracts of the same Nature, under the Title of, *A Voyage from Alexandria into India*, in a small Octavo Volume*, printed by *Aldus*, at *Venice*, in 1540; which was within two Years

after the Voyage was performed. The other is given us by *Ramusio*, in the first Volume of his *Italian Collection*, and intitled, *A Voyage, written by a Venetian Officer of the Gallies**, who was carried Prisoner from the City of *Alexandria* to *Diu* in *India*, with his Return afterwards to *Kairo*, in 1538.

1537.
Soleymán
Bathá

THESE Copies differ in several other Respects, besides the Title, *Ramusio's* being altered here and there, as to the Substance, as well as Diction; which, in many Places, is obscure in *Aldus's* Copy. Yet this latter is of Use, to correct some Errors of the Press, crept into that of *Ramusio*; who has omitted the last Paragraph of the Voyage relating to the Apparition of dead Bodies annually near *Kairo*, as well as an Account which is annexed of the Places, at that Time possessed by the *Portuguese*, in the *Indies*; doubtless, because the Author owns, he does not speak as an Eye Witness. The first we have inserted, but not the last; having already given a much better Account of those Places. Our Translation is from *Aldus's* Copy; and in it we have marked the Variations of the other, by inclosing them within Hooks: We have likewise divided it into Sections, after the Manner of *Ramusio*.

THIS Voyage, though not performed by the *Portuguese*, yet seems to claim a Place here, as it has a near Connection with their Affairs; and serves to compleat that which follows: For one was made along the Eastern Side of the Sea, the other along the Western. So that both together afford a tolerable Account of the Whole; and are the more valuable, as being in Effect, the only particular Relations extant of Voyages performed, as they were, from one End of the *Arabic Gulf* to the other; excepting that of Mr. *Daniel*, in 1700, which is very superficial.

YET the Geographers, except *de Lisle*, and one or two more since, seem to have made no Use of either of these Helps. However, it must be confessed, this is not so surprising, as to find, that neither of these two Journals, tho' very particular in marking each Day's Rout, takes the least Notice of that great Bay, (anciently called the *Elanitic*) a little to the East of *Tor*, or *al Túr*, running by the Foot of Mount *Sinay*, a great Way into *Arabia*. Which has been described by the *Arab* Geographers, and confirmed lately by two eminent Travellers of our own Nation, Dr. *Shaw*, and Dr. *Pocock*, who have delineated it in their Maps.

As to the Voyage of the *Venetian Officer*, at present under our Consideration, it hath two Things peculiar to it. First, it shews the Way of Sailing, used by the *Turks*, (with whom we may

* Intitled, *Piaggi fatti da Vinetia, alla Tana, in Persia, in India, and in Costantinopoli, &c.* the Word used here, signifies the Boatswain, who in the Gallies, superintends the Slaves.

Comite,

join

1537. join the *Arabs* and *Indians*) in those Eastern Seas. Secondly, it mentions several Particulars relating to the Siege of *Diu*, and Actions of the *Bashâ*, that could not be so well known to the *Portuguese*; and serves to rectify some Things, as well as clear up others. Here it must be observed, that the Soundings, or Depth of Water is every where, except in two or three Places, reckoned by the Pace, consisting of five Foot, though we call it the Fathom, which is six. The Time of Sailing is also set down, according to the *Italian Account*; which begins the Day at Sun-set, and reckons the Hours successively round, from One, which is sixty Minutes after, to Twenty-four, instead of dividing it into twice Twelve, as is customary with the *English* and other Nations.

S E C T. I.

The Venetian Merchants and Sailors at Alexandria, pressed into the Turkish Service. Are sent to Suez or Swiz. Its Description. Two Thousand Men desert the Gallies. Tor. Island Soridan. Port Kor.

Venetians
seized at Alex-
andria.

THIS Voyage (the anonymous Author tells us) was performed by him, not voluntarily, but by Constraint; having been obliged to follow *Soleyman Bassâ*^a [Eunuch] who was commanded by *Soleyman Sach*^b, Emperor of the *Turks*, to go on an Expedition against the *Portuguese* in the *Indies*. At such Time as the War broke out in the Year 1537, against the Lordship of *Venice*; and that her trading Gallies, commanded by *Antonio Barbarigo*, were at *Alexandria*. Here they stayed without having any Opportunity of Trafficking, or taking in Goods, till the seventh of *September*; on which Day *Almorô Barbaro*, the *Venetian* Consul, Captain *Barbarigo*, before-mentioned, the Merchants, Seamen, and every thing belonging to them, were arrested, and lodged in the Tower of *Lances*. After which, all those who belonged to the Sea, being picked out in the rest, (among whom the Author was one) they were sent by fifty at a Time to *Kairo*, and from thence to *Bassâ Soleyman*; who having chosen the Gunners, Rowers, Carpenters, Caulkers, Officers, the Admiral and some Companies sent them to *Suez*, whither a while after, he dispatched several others to fit out the Fleet in that Port against his Coming.

Suez de-
scribed.

SUEZ is in a desert Place, where grows no Herb of any Kind. Here the Ships were built, designed for *India*; and all the Timber for building them, Iron-work and Tackle, was brought

Bassâ

^b *Shâh*, it should rather be *Khân*.

seems to be some Mistake here; it being scarce possible, that so few Men should surround and overcome 2000 who were armed, and seem to have been Soldiers. Some of whom, as appears from the next Chapter, were put to the Oar

VOL. I.

Nº 4.

N

Trea-

^a from *Satalia* and *Constantinople* to *Alexandria*, and then carried down the *Nile* in *Zerba* (*Ferbeh*, or Barks) to *Kairo*, and thence, by Camels, to *Suez*, where *Pharaoh* was drowned. On the Road from *Kairo* hither, which is eighty Miles, one meets with no Habitations, nor even Water, or any thing to eat; so that before the *Karawâns* set out, they furnish themselves with the Water of *Nile*. In the Time of the *Christians* this was a great City, and full of Cisterns: It had also a [navigable] *Kalı*, or Canal, cut from the *Nile*, whereby, on the Increase of the River, those Cisterns were filled with Water, which served all the Year. Afterward having been destroyed by the *Mohammedans*, the Canal was filled up with Earth; and now the Water that is drank at *Suez*, is brought by Camels from certain Ponds, or Wells, at a Tower six Miles distant: Which Water, though very brackish, they had to drink; every fifty Men being allowed as much as a Camel could carry. All the Timber, Iron, Ammunition, and Provisions, were brought from *Kairo*. *Suez* stands in a Bay of the *Red-Sea*, and has a small Fort, with mud Walls, thirty Paces square, with twenty *Turks* to guard the Place. The Fleet consisted of seventy-six Sail, great and small, viz. six Maons, seventeen Gallies, twenty-seven new Foists, two Galleons, four Ships, and other small Craft.

THE ninth of *March*, 1538, about 2000 Men quitting the Gallies, landed with their Arms, in order to march towards the Mountains, but, about six Miles from the Shore, they were met by a *Sanjak*, accompanied with twenty-seven Horse^d, designed for the Garrison of *Suez*; who surrounded them, and having killed two hundred, the rest were stripped, and carried on board the Gallies, where they were chained to the Oar.

THE fifteenth of *June*, *Soleyman Bassâ*, arrived at *Suez*, where pitching his Tents, they rested eight Days. Mean while the Fleet was got in Readiness, and the Soldiers received their Pay, viz. to each five Ducats of Gold, and ten *Maydins*, in all 215 *Maydins*. Part of the Men of the large (*Venetian*) Galley, to which the Author belonged, were distributed on board the Fleet, seventy in one half Galley, seventy in another, fifteen in the *Kiahya's* Galley, and eighteen on board that of *Khaherki Bassâ*, who had with him the Consul of *Alexandria*: The rest of the Men were disposed of in two Galleons, which carried the Powder, Salt-petre, Brimstone, Ball, Meal, Biscuit, and every thing else for the Use of the Fleet. The *Bashâ* likewise sent his

1538.
Soleyman
Bassâ.

Two Thousand
desert.

Soleyman
arrives.

The Venetians
deserted.

^c 'Tis *Pagans* in *Ramusio's* Copy.

^d There

1538. Treasure on board the Galleys, consisting of forty-two Chests, which was covered with Ox-hides and Oil-cloth. On the twentieth he ordered all to be on board the Fleet in two Days.

Soleymân
Bashâ.

The Fleet
departs.

THE twenty-second the *Bashâ* embarked, and removed four Miles from *Suez*, to the Point of *Pharaoh*, where there is a good Bottom, in four Fathom Water. Seven Men died here. This Place is twelve Miles from the Pits of *Moses*.

THE twenty-seventh, the whole Fleet left *Suez*, with a North-West Wind; and before Nightfall, cast Anchor sixty Miles thence, at a Place called *Korondol*; where *Moses* stretching out his Rod, divided the Sea, and *Pharaoh* was drowned with all his Host: And hence, (the Author thinks) it came to be called the *Red-Sea*. Here they had twelve Fathom Water, and stayed one Night.

THE twenty-eighth, leaving *Korondol*, they sailed South-East, thirty-three Leagues, and cast Anchor, two Hours before Night, in a Place called *Tor*, where there are many *Franciscan* Friars, who furnished the Fleet with Water. This Place is a Day's Journey and half, from Mount *Sinay*, where is the Church and Body of St. *Catharine*. Here they remained five Days, in five Fathom Water.

Tor, or al
Tut.

THE third of *July* they departed, and came behind a dry Sand-bank, about one Mile from Shore, and forty from *Tor*, casting Anchor in twelve Fathom Water, at a Place called *Kharas*; where they stayed two Days, to inspect the two Ships which carried the Stores.

Kharas.

THE fifth they left *Kharas*, and, about five o'Clock, came to an Island called *Soridan*, forty Miles from the Coast. The whole Day's Course, from Sun-set to Sun-rise, was 100 Miles. They sailed all Night South-East, and, at Sun-rise, found themselves to windward of a Mountain called *Marzaan*, on the right Hand, 100 Miles farther.

Island Soridan.

THE sixth they sailed South-East, and at Sun-rise, saw Land to the Right, towards *Kabisa*, having gone 100 Miles.

Coast of Kabisa.

THE seventh they sailed ninety Miles, South-East by East.

THE eighth, proceeding at the Rate of eight Miles an Hour, at Sun-rise they got 100 Miles. In the Night the Wind was South-Westerly, and they sailed South-East twenty Miles.

* Called afterwards *Kabisa*; but in *Ramuso's* Copy, the *Abissini*: So that instead of *Kabisa* should be read *Habash*, or *Habashin*, commonly called *Abassia*, *Abissina*, and *Abissina*.^b *Jiddah* or *Joddah*. This is the Port of *Mekka*. *De Lisle*, in his Map of *Egypt*, *Nubia*, and *Abissinia*, makes *Zidem*, which he calls also *Grade* (doubtless a Corruption of *Jiddah*) a distinct Place, a little to the South. But this must be a Mistake. For *Jiddah*, for many Ages, has been the Port of *Mekka*, as *Zidem* here appears to be. Besides, the Circumstance of *Eve's* Tomb, which the *Mohammedan* Writers place at *Jiddah*; and here *Pitts* saw it (See his Account of the Religion and Manners of the *Mohammedans*, third Edition, p. 136) *Therwenot* says her Tomb is at *Gidde*, which *De Lisle* supposed to be a different Place from *Gidde* or *Joddah*; and hence came his Mistake.

^c The Meaning is, by good Luck, to express the Author's Satisfaction at the Accident.

Ramuso's

THE ninth the Morning was calm, and the Winds variable; and to the South-East they found a Shoal under Water, fifty Miles from the Coast. Their Course North-West, till Sun-set, was ten Miles, and in the Night, South by West, twenty Miles.

1538.
Soleymân
Bashâ.

THE tenth they sailed seventy Miles South-East, and came to a Port called *Kor*, a very desert Place, in eight Fathom Water.

Port of Kor.

SECT. II.

Soleymân arrives at *Joddah*, the Port of *Mekka*. Islands *Alfas*, *Kamaran* and *Tuiché*. Straits of *Bâb al Mandub*.

THE eleventh, leaving *Kor*, they sailed a long Shore till Noon, thirty Miles, to a City, named *Zidem*.^b Which is the Scale, or Landing-place of all the Spicery that comes from *India* and *Kalekut*; distant from *Mekka* a Stage and half. Here are several Shoals, both under and above Water; yet 'tis a good Port, and has Plenty of Provisions. But no Water is to be met with, excepting what is in a few Cisterns, filled with Rain. Here one meets with Store of Merchandize, and the Place affords Dates, Ginger of *Mekka*, and other Sorts. Without the City is a Moske, where, according to the *Moors*, is the Sepulchre of *Eve*. The Inhabitants go almost naked, are meagre and swarthy. Here is Fish in Abundance: They tie three or four Pieces of Timber together, about six Foot long, and on one of these Floats a single Man sitting, rows with a Board, and ventures out eight or nine Miles at Sea to fish, in all Weathers. Here the Fleet rested four Days, and took in Water.

THE fifteenth, at their Departure, five small Vessels were missing, by Chance^c; which they understood by a Man who escaped out of a Foist. This Day they sailed South-West by South, eighty Miles.

THE sixteenth their Course was South-East, with a very small Wind till Night, thirty Miles, and thence to Sun-rise fifty Miles.

THE seventeenth they sailed South by East till Night, 100 Miles; and from thence, to Sun-rise, sixty Miles, South-East by South.

THE eighteenth they steered South-East, during the Day the Weather dusky, 140 Miles^d. In the Night fifty Miles, South-East by East.

THE

1538. THE nineteenth they sailed East by South, with a brisk Wind, till nine in the Morning, and came among certain Islands, called *Asfas*, a desert Place; and inhabited only by People, who came from other Islands, to fish and seek for Pearls; which they get by diving to the Bottom of the Sea, in four Fathom Water. They drink Rain Water, preserved in Cisterns and Canals. Here they stayed all Night, having ran 100 Miles.

Soleymân
Bashâ.
Islands of
Atlas.

Island Ka-
maran.

The Barks.

The People
and Sails.

It is not sum-
moned.

THE twentieth they came to an Island, twenty Miles from Land, called *Khamaran*; where they met with good Water and Provisions. In this Place there was a ruinous Castle, uninhabited; and about fifty Houses, made of the Boughs of Trees: There are some other Huts scattered over the Island. They get Abundance of white Coral here. The Men go quite naked and barefoot: They are little, and wear nothing on their Heads but their Hair, wrapping up their Privities in a Clout. They are all Seamen, having a few Barks and small Craft, (the Planks of) which are bound together with Ropes, without any Iron-work; and their Sails, Mats curiously made (as well as the Cordage) with the Bark of Palm and Date Trees, after the Manner of Fans. They go to Land with these Barks, and bring thence Abundance of Dates, Zibibs, and a Sort of white Buck-wheat, and make a good Quantity of *Mecha* Ginger. They have Plenty of Myrrh also from *Bysa*^a. They break their Buck-wheat on a Piece of Marble, about the Size of the Stone Colours are ground on, and upon it is another Stone, half an Ell broad, in form of a rolling Pin, or Roller, with which they bruise it; and, in a Trice, work up a Paste, of which they make thin Cakes. This is their Bread, and it is very hard, so that it must be made fresh every Day, otherwise it will grow so dry, that there is no eating of it. Both Flesh and Fish is here Plenty enough.

THIS Place is from the Islands of *Akhesus*^b, forty Miles. Here the *Bashâ* landed, and caused all the Galleys to turn in with him. From hence he dispatched two Foists, one to the King of *Zibit*, [*Zabid*] the other to him of *Adem* [*Aden*] ordering them to provide Water and Provision for the Fleet, that he might be enabled to proceed in his Expedition to *India*, against the *Portugueze*; and to tell the King of *Zibit* (which lies a Day's Journey within Land) that he must come to the Water-side, and bring the Grand Signior's Tribute, and pay Obedience to the *Bashâ*. Here

the Fleet was furnished with Water, and staid ten Days.

THE thirtieth they left *Khamaran*, with a small Wind, and sailing fifty Miles, South by East, at one in the Morning came to the Island *Turcé*. Where the Bark which was sent to *Zibit*, met them, and brought the King's Present to the *Bashâ*; consisting of Swords, wrought at *Zimna*, in the Shape of viril Members^c, the Handles and Scabbards being of Silver, gilt. Also some Poniards of the same Sort of Workmanship; the Handles of which were adorned with *Turky* Stones, Rubies and Pearls. As to the Tribute, the King of *Zibit* sent the *Bashâ* Word, that he would pay it at his Return from conquering the *Portugueze*; acknowledging himself the Grand Signior's Slave. This Day they advanced fifty Miles, and in the Night they sailed fifty more, South by East.

THE first of *August* they proceeded ten Miles in the Night, with a South-East Wind, to a Shoal, called *Alontrankin*^d, near the *Streights* Mouth, and to the Right, on the Side of *Kabysia* [*Habash*]. Here they had two Fathom Water, and stayed one Night.

1538.
Soleymân
Bashâ.

Islands of
Atlas.

Streights of
Babal man-
d b

S E C T. III.

Soleymân arrives at Aden. Hangs the King and four others at the Yard-arm of his Galley. Proceeds, and casts Anchor near Diu.

THE second of *August*, leaving the Shoal, they sailed East by South, ten Miles, and got out of the *Streights*; whence proceeding till Sun-rise next Morning, they went eighty Miles farther.

THE third, sailing East by North eighty Miles, the Fleet arrived at the City of *Adem*. 'Tis very strong, and stands by the Sea-side, surrounded with exceeding high Mountains. On the Top of which are little Castles or Forts. 'Tis encompassed also with Ravelins on every Side, excepting a little Opening, about 300 Paces wide, for a Road into the Country, and to the Shore, with Gates, Towers, and good Walls. Besides all this, there lies a Shoal before the City, on which is built a Fort; and at the Foot of it a Tower for the Defence of the Port, which lies to the South, and has two Fathom Water. To the North there is a large Port, with good Anchorage, covered from all Winds. There is Plenty of good Water here. The Soil is dry,

Arrives at
Aden.

^a It is the Land of the *Alusini*, in *Ramusio's* Copy. called *Asfas*

^b *Ramusio's* Copy says, in the Shape of Sumetrs

^c *Ramusio's* Copy has *Akhasar*, the same before

^d In *Ramusio's* Copy 'tis called *Babel*; which are the first two Words of *Bab al Mandub*, (corruptly called *Babel Mundul*) that is, the Gate of Weeping, the Name given the Mouth of the Red-Sea, or Arabic Gulph. Which was reckoned so dangerous by the antient *Arabs*, that whenever any of their Relations passed it, they put on Mourning for them, as Persons they gave over for lost, or dead Men

1538. producing no kind of thing. They have none ^a but Rain-water, which is preserved in Cisterns and Pits, 100 Fathom deep, and when drawn out, 'tis so hot as not to be drank, till it has stood to cool. This City is furnished with Provision, Wood, and every thing else from other Places. Here are *Jews* enough

^{Sends for the King.} As soon as they arrived, there came four Men of Fashion to the Bashâ, bringing with them several Refreshments. He received them courteously, and talked to them a while in private. After which he gave each of them two Vests of figured Velvet; and sent them back with his safe Conduct for the Prince, signifying, that he might safely come on board, and fear nothing. But the Lord of *Aden* sent to tell him, that he would not go himself, but would readily supply him with whatever he stood in need of. And thus Matters stood this Day

^{He goes on board,} THE fifth, the Bashâ ordered the *Janitzeris* to land with their Arms, and all the Gallies to man their Boats. He dispatched his *Kialya*, to summon the Lord of the City to come and do Homage to the Grand Signor, before the Bashâ. To whom he answered, I see by your Head, that I am the [Grand] Signor's Slave, and so came to the Galleys with many of his Court. The *Kialya* presenting him, with a Handkerchief about his Neck, to the Bashâ, who embraced him, and entertained him well. They talked together a while, after which *Soleymân* caused two Vests of figured Velvet to be brought, which he gave the Lord of the City, and put on him. In the same Manner were all the Lords of his Retinue clad. Afterwards having conferred together a considerable Time, the Bashâ dismissed and gave him Leave to return to the City. But what happened after this is not proper for me to relate ^a. Let it suffice to say, that on a sudden *Soleymân* ordered a *Sanyâk*, with 500 Janizaries to take Possession of the City; whose Inhabitants are like those of *Kharabnia* ^b, swarthy, lean and little.

<sup>And is long-
ed at the
land-an</sup>

ADEN is a Place of Trade, and trafficks with the *Indians*. There arrive yearly three or four Ships loaden with several Sorts of Spices, which are sent from hence to *Kairo*. In these Parts grow Ginger of *Mecha*, and no other Sort.

THE eighth, the Fleet removed to the North Side of *Aden*, and there layed in Water, which took up eleven Days.

^a But in *Ramusio's* Copy the Author is made to relate the Matter, *viz.* That the same Instant the Bashâ dismissed the King, he caused him to be hanged by the Neck at the Yard-arm, and four of his Favourites along with him. This is the Fact, but whether they are the Words of the Author or *Ramusio*, is a Question. However that be, we can see no Reason why he should be reserved in this Case, and make no Scruple to give an Account of what happened to the King of *Zabid*, as will be seen hereafter.

^b Or *Arabia*, as in *Ramusio's* Copy. ^c In *Ramusio's* Copy, *Diu*. Supposed the same as the *Malabar* Word *Dru*, which signifies an Island; this being so denominated, by Way of Excellency.

THE nineteenth, the whole Armada departed, 1538. being in all seventy-four Sail, reckoning Gal-Soleymân leys, Foists, Ships and lesser Vessels; the Bashâ leaving behind three Foists to guard the Port. This Day their Course was forty Miles, East by North.

THE twentieth, they sailed East with a Western Breeze, fifty Miles. In the Night they made twenty Miles, East by South.

THE twenty-first, they ran thirty Miles East in a Calm, and by Sun-rise thirty more.

THE twenty-second, it was calm till Noon, when a little Wind rose. Their Course till Night was twenty Miles; and from thence East, till Day-break, fifty.

THE twenty-third, they steered East by North sixty Miles, in the Night, North-East, forty Miles.

THE twenty-fourth, they sailed North-East, forty Miles; and in the Night, forty Miles.

THE twenty-fifth, their Course was North-East by East, ninety Miles; and in the Night, till Sun-rise, 100 Miles.

THE twenty-sixth, they sailed North-East, ninety Miles, and in the Night, eighty.

THE twenty-seventh, they proceeded North-East, ninety Miles, and in the Night 100.

THE twenty-eighth, North-East, in the Day-time ninety Miles; and in the Night ninety more.

THE twenty-ninth, they held on the same Course, ninety Miles by Day, and the like Quantity by Night.

THE thirtieth, they sailed, East by North, eighty Miles; and in the Night ninety North-East by East.

THE thirty-first, North-East by East seventy Miles; and in the Night eighty.

SEPTEMBER the first, proceeding on the same Rhumb, they sailed seventy Miles; and in the Night, fifty.

THE second, still the same Course, thirty Miles. Being at Noon in thirty-five Fathom Water, and in twenty at Night, within 100 Miles of *Diu* ^c; but from the nearest Land to the North, 400 Miles. They saw in the Sea, at the Distance of 100 or 150 Miles, certain Snakes, and the Water often green; which are Signs of approaching the Shore, throughout that Coast.

THE third, at Day-break, the Fleet proceeded, with calm Weather, along the Shore; and,

^{Soleymân}

^{Bashâ}

^{Leaves A}

^{den.}

^{Approach the Coast of India}

1538. at nine in the Morning, there came a Bark from a
 Soleymân Land, and told the Bashâ, that there were seven
 Bashâ hundred Portuguese in the Castle of Dio, and six
 armed Gallies. The Bashâ made them a Present
 of six *Kaftâns*, [or Vests] and having kept them
 an Hour, dismissed them. Afterwards, a Jew,
 being taken on Shore by the Sailors belonging to
 one of the *Turks*, was brought on board, and con-
 firmed the former Report. This Day, they ran
 thirty Miles, and in the Night thirty more.

Arrive near
 Diu.

THE fourth, at Sun-Rise, the Fleet proceeded b
 thirty Miles, and cast Anchor within three Miles
 of Dio. Before this, perceiving a Portuguese
 Foist come out of the Port, the Bashâ ordered a
 half Galley to sail after her, which pursued all
 Day, but lost her in the Night.

S E C T. IV.

*The Castle besieged by the Moors. The Turks
 plunder the City. The Indian Generals with-
 draw in Resentment. The Bashâ lands. A Man
 three hundred Years old. Women burn themselves.
 The Fleet removes.*

Khojah Zaf-
 far.

THE same Day, came on board in a Galley,
 one *Cosa Zaffar* ^a, a Native of *Otranto*,
 but turned *Turk*; and was Captain of the Galley
 in the former Fleet, sent by the Grand Signor
 to India: Which Fleet having been defeated and
 destroyed, this *Cosa Zaffar* went into the Ser-
 vice of the King of Dio, called King of *Kam-
 baya* ^b, (which is the Name of the Country) who
 gave him Lands, and made him Governor in
 Chief of all his Kingdom. *Zaffar* also had infi-
 nuated himself with the Portuguese, and gained
 their Friendship. But when he understood, that
 the *Turkish* Fleet was coming, he and the Vice-
 Roy of the Kingdom, came with eight thousand
^c *Indians*, and took the City from the Portuguese,
 and besieged them in the Castle. Not a Day pas-
 sed without a Skirmish.

Refugees the
 Castle.

ALONG with *Cosa Zaffar*, came the Prime
 Vizir ^d of the King. They were received with
 Honour by the Bashâ, and informed him, that
 there were five hundred Soldiers, and three hun-
 dred others, in the Castle, which they had be-
 sieged twenty six Days, and would not doubt to
 take it with their *Indians*, provided they were
 furnished by him with Artillery and Amunition;
 otherwise they should not be able. The Bashâ
 gave each of them two Vests. But while they f
 staid to talk with him, the *Turks* landed with

a their Arms, and plundered the City, doing the
Indians a thousand Injuries, not sparing the Vice-
 Roy's Palace, from whence they took three fine
 Horses, Money and Furniture; in short, what-
 ever they could lay Hands on. They advanced
 also up to the Castle, and skirmished with the
 Portuguese. The Vice-Roy being returned, and
 made acquainted with the Outrages committed by
 the *Turks*, immediately gave Orders to his Officer
 to be in Readiness, and the Night following, re-
 tired with about six thousand Men, and went to
 the King, who was then about two Days Journey
 up the Country. The same Night, there came
 a Foist from the City, with Provisions of fresh
 Bread, Nuts, Flesh, boiled Rice, and other Things,
 in the King's Name, which were disposed on
 board the Bashâ's Galley.

1538.
 Soleymân
 Bashâ

City plus des-
 troyed

Ind in C-
 rish, s. h
 d. av.

THE fifth, the Bashâ sent the *Moorish* Captain *Mur Tur* ^e
 and his *Kiahya*, to join those on Shore. All the
 Gallies sent their Boats, filled with Janizaries,
 to assist those of the Country, who were encamp-
 ed round the Castle, and not above two thousand
 Men, the rest being departed with the Vice-Roy,
 and *Cosa Zaffar*.

THE seventh, the Fleet removed, and came to
 a very good Port, called *Muda Burak* ^f, thirty
 Miles from Dio, where there is Water enough.

Modaffir
 ab d

THE eighth, the Bashâ went on Shore, where
 they had begun to play the Cannon, which, for
 that Purpose, were mounted on four Maons ^g.
 He sent also three Cannon ashore, which were
 planted on a Tower, standing by the Water Side,
 about a Cannon Shot from the great Fortrefs, on
 which Tower stood *Indians* to give Billets, and
 receive the Customs. It had thick Walls, and
 was defended with four Brass Guns, with a Com-
 mander, and one hundred Soldiers. It has nei-
 ther Ditch nor Water round it.

The Bashâ
 landed

ON the ninth, a Ship and Galley, laden with
 Biscuits, Powder, and other Ammunition, entered
 the Port; and striking on a Sand Bank, sunk.
 The Goods and the Galley were recovered again,
 but the Ship split in Pieces.

Turkish
 Ship lost.

THE nineteenth, there arrived a half Galley
 in bad Condition, which had been kept back by
 the Weather, and driven to a Port belonging to
 a certain People, who are *Gentiles*, called *Samar*
 where sending a Boat, with some Janizaries, on
 Land, they were all cut in Pieces. After which,
 taking the Barge, and manning some of their
 own Barks, they set upon the Galley, and slew
 sixty Persons more, insomuch, that she had much-

Some Jani-
 zaries cut

^a *Khojah Zaffar*, or rather *Zaffar*. The *s* in *Cosa*, seems to be used to express our *j* consonant
^b In *Aldus's* Copy, *Cambachia*; but in *Ramusio's* *Cambasa*
 seems not to be correct. ^c Vice-Roy, in *Ramusio*. ^d Afterwards, as called *Modaffir aba*, which
 differs but little from *Modaffir abad*, as we conjecture, it ought to be written. ^e A sort of *Turkish*
 Barks.

1538
Soleymân
Bashâ

a-do to escape. On joining the Fleet, the Bashâ^a sent for the Pilot, and caused him to be hanged for his ill Success.

THE twenty-fifth, an *Indian* belonging to the Castle, who had turned *Christian*, being taken in a Salley, was brought before the Bashâ, who ordered him to be examined. But the Man refusing to answer any Questions, was by the Bashâ's Command, cut in two.

9 Mar
1538
Soleymân
Bashâ

THE same Day, an old Man presented himself before the Bashâ, saying, he was upwards of three hundred Years old; which was confirmed by the People of the Country, who asserted, that there were several very old Folks thereabouts^b.

People of
the Country

IN this Country, the People are very lean, and live very sparingly, and eat no Beef; but ride on their Oxen, which are small and handsome, very tractable, and have a sort of Pace. They make a Hole through the Nostrils of the Beast, and run a Cord through, which serves for a Bridle. They load them in the same Manner as Mules are loaded. Their Horns are long and straight. There is great Feasting on the Birth of one of these Creatures, which they have great Veneration for, especially the Cow; and on this Account, they are reckoned Idolaters.

Women burn
themselves.

WHEN any of this Sort of Men happens to die, the Wife makes a great Feast for her Relations; after which they go dancing along, according to their Custom, to a Place where a great Fire is prepared, and throw the Corpse into the Flames. They carry along with them a large Pot full of Grease, scalding hot. Then the Widow dances round the Fire, singing the Praises of her dead Husband. After this, she gives one Relation a Ring, another a Gown, and so on, till she has nothing left on her, but a Cloth to hide her Nakedness; and immediately after, takes a Pot of the scalding Grease, and casting it into the Fire, leaps herself into the Midst of it. Those about the Fire, throw upon her the Pots with Grease, to increase the Flame; so that she is dead in an Instant. Those Women, who would be thought virtuous, observe this Custom: And those who do not, are reputed wicked, bad Livers, and dishonest; nor will any marry with such afterwards.

The Country
Tree.

THIS Country is very rich, and produces abundance of excellent Ginger of all Sorts, and Cocoa Nuts; whereof they make Vinegar, Oil, Flour, Cordage, and Mats. The Tree resembles the Date Tree, differing in nothing but the Fruit and the Leaf, that of the Palm being broader.

The
Country

THE twenty-eighth, the Fleet departed from the Port of *Mudaseraba*^b, where they had from two to four Fathom Water.

^a See before, p. 83
^b Meduffes abâd

Copy, the Name is omitted; it being only said, that he

THE twenty-ninth, they sailed six Hours, and cast Anchor fifteen Miles from *Dio*, where they staid one Night.

1538.
Soleymân
Bashâ

THE thirtieth, the Fleet departed with a North Wind from the Shore, and went behind the Castle of *Dio*. Where all the Galleys discharged their Artillery, and then turned off; casting Anchor about three Miles from thence.

SECT. V.

A Bulwark surrenders to the Turks, and the Portuguese made Galley Slaves. The Bashâ's Cowardice. The Standard on the Fortrefs shot down. Artillery of a prodigious Size. A Breach made. The Turks repulsed.

THE first of *October*, there came a Person from the lesser Castle, as Ambassador to the Fleet, to capitulate, because they could hold out no longer, in Regard the *Turks* had planted three Pieces of Cannon under it, which carrying one hundred and fifty Pound Balls of Iron, pierced the Tower from Side to Side. So that the Stones flew about, and killed twenty out of one hundred Defendants. But before they surrendered, they with their Muskets, and four Pieces of Cannon, flew abundance of *Turks*, the Fire having continued for eighteen or twenty Days. As soon as this Person had delivered his Message, he was presented with a rich Vest, and had a safe Conduct written in ample Form, for himself, and others. With which landing, he prevailed on the Captain of the Tower, and two other Persons, to go to the Bashâ, who gave the former a Vest also, and confirmed the safe Conduct, with this Condition, that they should not go into the great Fortrefs. The Captain, whose Name was *Juan Francisco Padoano*^c, returning to the Castle, which was called *Gogole*^d, brought off his Men, in Number eighty, whom the Bashâ ordered to be confined in a House, without Arms, and under a strong Guard.

THE third, the Bashâ sent for the four Slave-Gunners of the large Galleys, and ordered them on Shore to batter the Fortrefs. He likewise ordered the *Portuguese*, who had surrendered, to be distributed into several Galleys, and chained to the Oar, Captain and all. The same Day, three *Portuguese* Galleys entered the Port of *Dio*, without the least Opposition. For the Bashâ did not send one Vessel to hinder them.

THE eighth, there arrived a Ship with Provisions, which was lost in the Road. On board, were fifteen Men of the large Galleys, among whom was the Admiral himself, and an Officer of the Provision, sixty Sailors, and the rest Galley Slaves.

^c It should be *Padoano*. See p. 103. but in *Ramusio's* was a *Portuguese*.
^d In *Ramusio's* Copy, *Gogole's*.

1538. THE thirteenth, the Fleet removed from the West, to the East Side of *Dia*, two Miles from it; where the Guns, shot from the Fortrefs, sunk one Galley, and broke the Main-Yard of another.

THE fifteenth, the *Bashâ* went from the *Maon* into the half Galley, and ordered them to put all the *Christians* in Irons; and to take a white Sail from another Galley, his own being distinguished with Colours: And this he did, because he expected the *Portuguese* Fleet every Hour, [and did not care that it should be known what Ship he was in.] *Being also doubtful of the Artillery, he caused a great Ring of Cables, and other hollow Things, to be made at the Poop, sufficient to keep off Cannon-Shot; for he was fearful and cowardly.

THE seventeenth, being the Eve of St. *Luke*, the *Bashâ* caused the Head of one, belonging to the *Venetian* Gallies, to be cut off, for only saying, *My Lordship [of Venice] is not dead.*

THE twenty-second, the *Bashâ* gave Orders, to acquaint all the Gunners that were on Shore, about four hundred in Number, (because every Day one or other of them was slain) that whoever had Skill enough to strike down the great Standard of the Fortrefs, which stood in the Midst of a great Tower, should, besides being made free, have a thousand *Meidens*, and a Vest for his Reward. And the rather, for that his Standard had been given by a *Sanyâk* to the *Portuguese*. Whereupon one of the said *Christians*, having at the third Shot broke the Standard, the *Turks* made great Rejoicings, and published the News throughout the Fleet. The Gunner was rewarded with a Silk Vest.

THE Artillery, which they had planted under the Castle, were all in one Line, but in six different Places. In the first was a Culverin of Iron, that carried a hundred and fifty Pound, and a Paderero, of two hundred Pound. At a small Distance, was an Iron *Passe Volant*, of sixteen Pound, which discharged Cartridge Shot. In another Place, was a Paderero of three hundred Pound, and a Culverin, a hundred and fifty Pound. In the second Post, was another *Passe Volant*, to match the first, both belonging to the large Gallies. In another Place, there was an Iron Saker, of twelve Pounds, a little Cannon of sixteen Pound; a Falcon of six Pound, and a Mortar, carrying a four hundred Pound. In another Post, was a Culverin of one hundred Pound; insomuch, that they had battered down one Tower; so that they could easily mount the Breach to fight, because the Tower was not very high, nor the Fosse quite dug. But as fast as the *Turks* ruined it, the Besieged filled it with Earth and Rubbish, as well as they could. It must also be observed, that this Fortrefs has no Flanks,

and being built on a Rock, they have made no Casemates, only erecting Embrasures at Top, which were all ruined and taken. But herein their Safety lay, that every Day fifteen or twenty of them sallied out, like so many furious Lions, and slew all they met with; which struck such a Terror among the *Turks*, that they fled in Confusion, as soon as they saw them issue forth.

THE twenty-fifth, the *Turks* caused a great Number of Cotton Sacks, covered with Skins, and bound with Ropes, to be prepared, and in the Night, had them thrown into the Ditch; so that they reached as high as the Wall. Which being observed by those within, early in the Morning, before the *Turks* put themselves in Order to make the Attack, and mount the Wall, three-score sallied out, whereof forty rushed in among the Enemy, fighting gallantly, while the other twenty remained in the Ditch; each of whom having a little leather Bag full of Powder, with a lighted Match in his Hand, cut the Bales, and putting in a Handful of Powder, then set Fire to it. So that in a short Time, several of the Sacks were consumed, and the Burning continued two Days. Those who sallied out upon the Enemy, maintained the Fight above three Hours; killing one hundred and ninety *Turks*, and wounding as many more, with the Loss of only two Men.

S E C T. VI.

Turkish Ship taken. The Castle attacked by the Boats, which are repulsed. The whole Army attacks the Breach, and are beaten off. They raise the Siege, and embark. The Portuguese Fleet appears, and that of the Turks sheers off. Enters the Gulf of Ormuz, comes to Kuria Muria, on the Coast of Arabia.

THE twenty-seventh, there arrived five *Portuguese* Foists, which took a *Turkish* one, and landed Succours: But could not enter the Port, because some of the Cannon above-mentioned commanded the Side of it, but over-shot the Wall.

THE twenty-ninth, the *Bashâ* ordered out forty Boats, filled with *Turks*, and a few Pieces of Cannon in each. In order to assault a little Castle or Fort, which is in the Port by the Water Side, behind the City, and was quite demolished by the *Turkish* Artillery. There were not above five or six Men in it; who, in a Bark, went daily to the great Castle, which is less than a Falcon-Shot distant. As soon as the Boats began to set forwards, those within the Fort lay down, to prevent being seen by the *Turks*; who, coming to the Place, ran their Prows on the Land, where every Thing lay in Ruins to the very Edge of the Water, and leaped on Shore: But those within met them with two Fire-Horns; and the Cannon

1538.
Soleymân
Bashâ.

Galley sunk.

The Bashâ's
Cowardice.

91 Standard
shot down.

P religious
Cannon

A Breach
made.

Turkish
Ship taken

A general
Attack

1538.
Soleymán
Bashá.

700 Turks
departed

Arabic
bucco

400
Turks

700 Turks
in bark.

Portuguese
fleet
departed

700 Turks
in bark.

of the great Castle played so furiously, that the Enemy quickly fled, and some of the Boats were sunk. Many were drowned, and made Prisoners by those in the great Castle; who came out in one of their Barks, and killed them in the Water. And those who were taken, were next Day hanged on the Battlements of the Castle.

THE thirtieth, the whole Camp, putting themselves in Order of Battle, advanced up to the Forts, on the Side towards the Port, with a great many Scaling-Ladders, in order to make a general Assault. And on the Side towards Land, mounted the Breach, (which they could do at Pleasure, because the Place was open) where they stood for three Hours. But when the Besieged saw that the *Turks* had not Courage to enter, they leaped upon the Breach, and pushed them into the Dutch, killing four hundred that Day.

THE thirty-first, the *Moorish* Captain went with eleven Gallies to attack the little Castle, but was not able to approach it for the Artillery of the great one, [which sunk the Vessels]

THE second of November, the *Sanjak* and *Jamizaries*, with all the rest of the *Turks*, came on board the Gallies, leaving behind them on Land, all the Artillery, which they had not Time to carry off. This was occasioned by the News they received, that the *Portuguese* Fleet was advancing in Order of Battle.

THE fifth, twenty Sail of *Portuguese* Ships appeared in Sight, and cast Anchor twenty Miles distant from the *Turkish* Fleet. They continued thus all Night; and in the Morning, only three Ships were seen at a Distance; at which Time, the *Turks* put off from Land: But at Sun-rise, there appeared many Ships, which shot off a great Number of Guns, although nothing could be discerned but the Flash of the Powder. Whereupon the *Bashá* gave Orders, for each Galley to shoot off three Guns. After this, the Trumpets being sounded, they fell to their Oars, and hoist their Foreails. This was done at one o' Clock at Night, and at four they departed, shaping their Course South South-West, with scarce any Wind; and, at Day-Break, had run thirty Miles.

THE seventh, they sailed forty Miles West South-West, the Weather being calm.

THE eighth, they proceeded thirty Miles West in the Day, and twenty in the Night.

THE ninth, they advanced twenty Miles West: And this Day the *Christians* had their Irons taken off.

THE tenth, they made no Way, the Weather proving calm the whole Day and Night.

THE eleventh, the Wind blowing West South-West, they stood North-West, advancing thirty Miles in the twenty-four Hours.

* In *Ramusio's* Copy, instead of *Khamaran*, we find the Islands of *Curia Muria*; which, to be sure, is the true Reading. The *Arabs* call them *Klutan* and *Mutan*.

THE twelfth, the Wind being North-West by North, they entered the Gulf or *Ormúz*; and then sailed West South-West, advancing all that Day and Night, but thirty Miles.

THE thirteenth, they proceeded West seventy Miles by Day, and ninety in the Night.

THE fourteenth, one hundred Miles by Day, and the same by Night.

THE fifteenth, eighty by Day, and eighty by Night.

THE sixteenth, eighty Miles in the Day, and seventy by Night.

THE seventeenth, ninety by Day, and eighty by Night.

THE eighteenth, a hundred Miles by Day, and seventy by Night.

THE nineteenth, seventy by Day, and eighty by Night. Their Course all this Time West.

THE twentieth, they sailed West by South ninety Miles, and saw Land to the Windward. In the Night, they proceeded a hundred Miles.

THE twenty-first, they sailed West by South eighty Miles by Day, and fifty by Night.

THE twenty-second, they steered the same Course ten Miles in the Day, and twenty by Night.

THE twenty-third, there fell a Calm; and they sailed along the Coast of *Arabia* thirty Miles by Day, and twenty by Night.

THE twenty-fourth, the Calm continuing, with contrary Currents along the *Arabian* Coast, they arrived at a Town, called *Khamaran*, a Place not well inhabited, and Desert. Here they took in Water, and stayed one Day.

THE twenty-fifth, the Fleet departed, and sailed along the Coast thirty Miles in the Day, and thirty in the Night.

S E C T. VII.

Portuguese Factory at Aser; seized by the King of that Part, and delivered to the Bashá. He arrives at Aden, and puts to Death a Renegade of Note, who deserved it for another Crime. Re-enters the Streights, and comes to Mokha. Sends for the King of Zabid, who refuses to go to him, but sends a rich Present. The Island Khamaran. Kubit Sharif.

THE twenty-seventh, the second Hour in the Night, they cast Anchor in six Fathom Water, at a Town, called *Aser*; a desert and barren Place, where both Men and Cattle, are forced to live on Fish. These Men, were forty *Portuguese*, with their Consul, who residing here, carried on Trade, and had always with him some Merchants, besides those which continually arrived, and exported Spice and other Things:

But

1538. But their chief Trade was in Horses, which here a
Soleymân are excellent, one being valued at a hundred Ducats, and more; and, in *India*, will sell for a thousand. But as soon as the King of this Country understood, that *Soleymân* Bashâ was coming with his Fleet, he caused the *Portuguese* to be seized in their House, and made a Present of them to the Bashâ, who ordered them all to be chained. Here also they found a Ship, which had staid by the Way, not being able to proceed for *India*; and of a sudden, seized all the Biscuit for the Use of the Fleet, which remained here three Days. 'Tis worth taking Notice, that in all the Places where the Fleet arrived, the *Turks* gave out, that they had taken the whole Country of *India*, and cut all the *Christians* in Pieces.

Makaya. THE first of *December*, the Fleet departed, holding its Course West South-West; and sailing forty Miles, cast Anchor near the Coast of *Arabia*, three Hours before Dark, at a Place called *Makaya*, and took in Water.

THE second, they left *Makaya*, and sailed West South-West thirty Miles in the Day, and ten by Night.

THE third, holding on the same Course, they ran along the Coast of *Arabia* forty Miles by Day, and fifty in the Night.

THE fourth, seventy by Day, and thirty by Night.

Arrive at Aden. THE fifth, proceeding still West South-West sixty Miles, at nine o' Clock in the Night, cast Anchor behind the Town of *Adem*, resting there till Sun-Rise.

Story of a Renegado. THE sixth, the Bashâ being in *Adem* with his whole Fleet, he sent in the Morning for a Renegado Turk, [who was then a *Christian*, a Man of considerable Account] and, without saying any thing, caused his Head to be cut off. The Reason was, they all murmured; and the Bashâ fearing this Renegado would accuse him of Neglect or Cowardice, was resolved to be before-hand with him: Because he, formerly, was in the Pay of the King of this Place, and afterwards a Captain at *Dio*, when the King thereof was slain by the *Portuguese*. The Widow Queen, being possessed of a great Treasure, and desirous to retire to *Mekka*, was persuaded by this Man to go on board a Galleon, with which he treacherously sailed to *Egypt*; and thence, carried the Treasure to *Constantinople*, and made a Present of it to the Grand Signor. Who, being informed by him, how Matters passed in *India*, made him Patron of a Galley; and ordered him to return thither with the Fleet; which, succeeding badly, cost him his

Life. After this, the Bashâ, being desirous to secure *Adem*, caused a hundred Pieces of Cannon great and small, to be landed out of the Fleet; among which there were two *Passé Volants* of the great *Venetian* Gallies of *Alexandria*. He left there also a Quantity of Powder and Ball, with a *Sanjâk*, five hundred *Turks*, and five *Foissis*. The Bashâ now judging himself out of Danger, on the fourteenth, quitted the half Galley, and returned to the *Mam*.

b THE nineteenth, the Fleet removed towards the Land, to take in Water, and continued there three Days.

THE twenty-third, they sailed from *Adem* with a good Wind, West by South; and between the Evening and Morning, ran one hundred Miles.

THE twenty-fourth, at the fifth Hour of the Day, the Fleet entered the Streights of the *Red-Sea*, and all Night lay at Anchor.

c THE twenty-fifth, being *Christmas*, three Hours before Day, they departed, sailing North-West, with a scanty Wind: Nevertheless, they ran fifty Miles, and came to a Castle, called *Mecha*.

THE same Day, there came an old Turk, Governor of the Castle, to wait on *Soleymân*, who received him with great Honour, and gave him a Vest. The Governor, in Return, continually sent the Bashâ Refreshments from Shore; and a few Days after, brought on board all his Riches, which were very great; besides many fine Slaves of both Sexes, thinking every body would follow him.

As soon as the Fleet arrived at *Mecha*, the Bashâ sent an Ambassador to the City of *Zibit*, three Days Journey within Land, to summon the King forthwith to the Sea Side, to pay Obedience to the Grand Signor. The King made Answer, that as for the Tribute, he would readily pay it, and would willingly accept of a Standard, if the Bashâ would send him one: But that he would not go to the Sea Side; and did not know him. The Bashâ, being enraged at this Answer, next Day sent his *Kiabya* with a Banner, accompanied by some stout *Janizaries*; who arriving at *Zibit*, presented the same to the King. The King, in Return, made him a very fine Present; among which, was a fair Scimeter, with several Jewels: Likewise a Dagger, and some beautiful Pearls, of six Carats each, which made a String of more than a Foot in Length, besides a fine Pearl of eighteen Carats. For much oriental Pearl is taken on this Part of the Coast of *Arabia*. He farther gave to each of the *Turks*, two Vests of Cloth, and a little black Slave. The *Kiabya*

* This was *Badur*. See before, p. 83. b It should be *Mocha*, or rather *Mokha*: *Ramusio's* Copy has *Mocha*, to distinguish it from *Mekka*, which he writes *Mecha*. c Probably a *Chausi*, or State Messenger. d *Majfi* calls him *Nekoda Hamed*, and says, he was a Turk. e That is the Ensign of a *Sanjâk*; which Word signifies a Standard.

1539.
Soleyman
Bashâ.



made him many Compliments, and conjured him to come down to the Coast. But the King would by no Means consent, fearing he should be put to Death. When the *Kiabya* saw, that he could not prevail on him to go, he said, *If you will not go to the Bashâ, he will come to you*, and so took Leave. The Fleet stayed here twenty-nine Days.

Leave
Mokka.

THE twenty-third of *January*, (1539) they departed from *Mecha* at Sun-rise, with a brisk Gale, and sailed West by North, till Noon, then the Wind changing, they proceeded North-West, having run, in all, one hundred Miles.

Island of
Khamaran.

THE twenty-fourth, they advanced North-West, with their small Sails, and a fair Wind, thirty Miles in the Day, and by the sixth Hour of the Night, cast Anchor at (the Island of) *Khamaran*, twenty Miles farther.

THE twenty-ninth, the Bashâ landed, and gave Pay to all the Janizaries who were willing to fight, but not any Thing to the Galley Slaves and Seamen.

Kubât Sharîf.

THE second of *February*, the Weather being calm, they left *Khamaran*, by Help of their Oars, and about six o' Clock, came to a Place on the Coast, called *Kubât Sharîf*, twenty Miles from *Khamaran*.

SECT. VIII.

The Bashâ lands, and marches to the City of Zebîd. The King appears before him with a Cord about his Neck. He orders the King's Head to be cut off. Insnarcs two hundred Abissins by false Promises, and has them cut in Pieces. Zibîd, a delightful Place. Puts one hundred and forty-six Portugueze to Death for his Pleasure, and three Indians for their Riches. Zerzet, Adiudi, Muga, Darboni, Jasof, Kofodan, Salta, Ariadan.

Depart
from Zebîd

THE third, at Sun-rise, a *Turk* of those in Pay of the King of *Zibîd*, having revolted, with fifty Horse, came to the Bashâ; who received him kindly, and made him Presents. This Man encamped on the Shore with his Tents. Observe, that in this Country, they all make Use of Harbuck cloathed in Armour, on Account of the Darts and Arrows, which are their principal Weapons.

The Bashâ
here.

THE fourth, the Bashâ landed; and caused some Pieces of light Cannon to be put on Carriages; and his Men, Provision, and Amunition, to be gotten ready, in order to march towards *Zibîd*.

THE nineteenth, he set out on Horseback, three Hours before Day, and on the Road, met another *Turk* with fifty Horse, who had also re-

belled against the King. Him, the Bashâ made free, and continued his Journey.

1539.
Soleyman
Bashâ.

THE twentieth, he arrived at *Zibîd*; and encamping without the City, sent for the Lord thereof. Who, seeing himself betrayed by many of his own People, and distrusting the rest, came forth with a Cord about his Neck, as the Grand Signor's Slave, and presented himself before the Bashâ, who immediately caused his Head to be struck off. His People seeing this, fled to the Mountains, to the Number of three hundred. And among the rest, three of the principal Men, with all their Riches, which were very great, not knowing where to go. Upon this, the Bashâ sent to tell those who made their Escape, that they ought to return and join him; promising them good Pay, and to enrol them among his own Troops. Hereupon, there returned two hundred black *Abissins*, who had been Soldiers to the King.

THESE were valiant desperate Fellows, who did not value Life, and ran almost as swift as a Horse. They went quite naked, only wrapping their *Pudenda* in a Clout. For Arms, some carried Clubs of the Cornel Tree, headed with Iron; others pointed Stakes, to throw in the Manner of Darts; and some a short Sword, a Span shorter than those used by the *Christians*: Besides, every one had at his Girdle, a Dagger, bent after the *Moorish* Fashion. The Bashâ asked every one his Name, and caused him to write it, and set down more Pay than he had before. He dismissed them thus, one by one, with Orders to return next Morning, but without Arms, giving them to understand, that he intended to give them their Pay, and admit them to kiss his Hand, in which Case, they had no Occasion to carry Arms. The *Abissins*, having presented themselves at the Time appointed, were ordered to lay down their Weapons, and go where the Bashâ was sitting near a Tent in the Plain, with the *Turks*, in a Circle about him, under Arms. But as soon as they were all entered within the Ring, upon a Sign given, they were in one Instant cut in Pieces.

AFTER this, the Bashâ sent a *Sanjak*, with a thousand Soldiers, to secure *Zibîd*. Both the City and Country about it, are very fine, abounding with running Water, and delightful Gardens, and many Things besides, not to be found in any other Part of *Arabia*; especially *Zibîd* of *Dumascus*, without a Stone, and other excellent Fruit, as Dates. Flesh-meat is plenty, and Corn not scarce.

THE eighth of *March*, 1539, the Bashâ returned to the Sea Side, and ordered Ammunition to be sent to *Zibîd*; leaving also four Foisits to guard the Coast.

^a In *Aldus's* Copy in this Place, 'tis *Khebiccairif*; but afterwards *Kubât Sharîf*, (perhaps, *Kabbat Sharîf*, that is, the noble Dome) as *Ramusio* has it.

^b The true Name is *Zabîd*, *Zebîd*, or *Zebryd*.

1539.
Soleyman
Bashâ.

Put all the
Portuguese
to Death.

THE tenth, the Bashâ landed, and ordered the Portuguese, who were a hundred and forty-six in all, reckoning some *Indian* Converts, to be taken out of Irons, and brought bound on Shore. Where being distributed among the Troops, their Heads, by his Command, were struck off; and those of the Chief, Head, salted, and filled with Straw. Off others, they cut the Noses and Ears, to be sent to the Grand Signor.

THE thirteenth, the *Kiabya* departed, in Company with another Galley, to *Zadem* ^a, thence to *Mekba*, and so on towards *Constantinople*, with an Account of the Voyage to *India*, carrying with him, besides the Presents, the Heads, Noses, and Ears, that the Grand Signor might see they had done great Feats.

THE fourteenth, they removed, and pitched in the open Field.

Kor. THE fifteenth, they left *Kubit Sarif*; and at Sun-set, cast Anchor at a Place called *Kor*, distant from Land five Miles, and from *Kubit Sarif*, a hundred

Zerzer. THE sixteenth, they departed an Hour before Day, with a pleasant Wind, and sailing along the Coast, at Sun-set, came to Anchor at *Zerzer*, a Place subject to *Mekba*, in eight Fathom Water, and seventy Miles from *Kor*. Hither were brought the three Persons who fled from *Zibit* with their Riches. The Bashâ caused their Heads to be cut off, and seized the whole Treasure, which filled three Pans of Wallets, each of which was a Load for any one Man.

Mir Es. THE seventeenth, they sailed along the Coast with a pleasant Gale, which an Hour before Sun-rise, proving contrary, they cast Anchor in a Place called *Adiudi*, in eight Fathom Water, having ran fifty Miles.

Adiudi. THE eighteenth, two Hours before Day, they departed, coasting the Shore till Noon, and then cast Anchor in four Fathom, at *Mugera*, a good Port, fifty Miles distant, where there is both Water and Wood.

Mugera. THE nineteenth, an Hour before Day, they departed with their Oars; and at Sun-rise, the Wind changing, they sailed along Shore fifty Miles, to a Place called *Darbom*, subject to *Mekba*, in seven Fathom Water.

Darbom. THE twentieth, being calm, they coasted it till Noon, when a Gale springing up, at Sun-set they came to Anchor in ten Fathom Water, at a Place called *Yafuf* ^b, belonging to *Mekba*, fifty Miles farther.

Yafuf. THE twenty-first, they went on along the

Coast. At Noon, the Wind sprung up; and at Sun-rise, having made sixty Miles, they anchored at *Khesodan*, a Place dependent on *Mekba*, in forty Fathom.

THE twenty-second, the Bashâ ordered six Gallies should go foremost, on Account of the Sand Banks, which are so thick, that there is scarce any sailing in the Day-time. They came to a Shelf called *Turakh*.

THE twenty-third, they coasted it among the Shoals, through which only a single Galley could pass at a Time, and cast Anchor at a Place called *Salta*, in four Fathom, having ran fifty Miles.

THE twenty-fourth, sailing thirty Miles still along the Coast, at Noon they anchored in a Place called *Aradan*, but the Port *Mazabani*, a Place inhabited by Peasants, subject to *Mekba*, in six Fathom Water.

THE twenty-fifth, they sailed along Shore, but at Sun-rise, the Wind chopping about in their Teeth, drove them to Sea till Noon, and afterwards towards Land; so that they cast Anchor betimes, and rested till the twenty-seventh.

SECTION IX.

Other Places in Arabia where the Fleet cast Anchor, *Yufuma*, *Mukare*, *Balir*, *Mukhi*, *Juddah*, (the Port of *Mekka*) *Kontra* *Abehin*, *Almomufkhi*, *Rabon*, *Farsi*, *Sathan*, *Zorma*, *Yambo*, (the Port of *Medinah*) the Ports of *Sikhabo*, and *Khifac*.

THE twenty-seventh, two Hours before Day, they set forward in very pleasant Weather; and at eight o' Clock, having sailed thirty Miles, cast Anchor in four Fathom, at a Place called *Yufuma*.

THE twenty-eighth, they coasted the Shore with a fair Wind till Noon, and then entered among certain Banks, two Miles from Land. Here they could not cast their Anchors, for fear of losing them. The Place is called *Mukare*, *Mukare*, thirty Miles distant.

THE twenty-ninth, coasting along, they arrived among some other Shoals, called *Balir*, thirty-five Miles.

THE thirtieth, coasting the Shore till Evening, with a fair Wind, they anchored in twelve Fathom Water, at a Place called *Mukhi*, forty-five Miles farther.

THE thirty-first, two Hours before Day, they departed in a Calm, and at Sun-rise, the Wind blowing, in the Evening came to *Ziden*, or *Zidem* ^c.

^a In *Ramusio's* Copy 'tis *Zidem*; it should be *Jiddab*, *Joddab*, or *Juddab*, as 'tis differently pronounced. Yet *Barthema*, *Corseti*, *Barbosa*, and other Travellers of those Times, call it either *Zidem*, or *Ziden*; doubtless by Corruption, as *Yambo*, or *al Yambo*, the Port of *Mukka*, is named *Eloban* (which transposing the Letter, makes *El Fanbo*) by *Barbosa*. ^b Rather perhaps, *Yafuf*. ^c *Ramusio's* Copy has only *Ziden*; this is *Jiddab*, as observed in the Note above, and the Port of *Mekka*.

1539. **THE** first of April, the Bashâ landed, and a against the Wind; and at Even, came to a Town 1559.
pitching his Tents without the Town, rested called *Jombu* ^c. Soleymân
Bashâ.
- THE** seventh, the Bashâ rode towards *Mekha*, Their Water is kept in Cisterns, and is brought Come to
on Pilgrimage, and ordered the Fleet to proceed Yambo.
towards *Sues*
- THE** eighth, the Fleet was driven two Miles Also a Day's Journey within Land, stands a
from Shore, by a contrary Wind, and cast Anchor among the Shoals. large Town, called *Medinat al Nabî*, where is *Medioab*.
Mohammed's Sepulchre, although it is commonly
said to be at *Mekha* ^d. Here we staid six Days
- THE** eleventh, they advanced with a fair Gale, **THE** first of May, they set Sail at four o'
and at the twentieth Hour made towards Land, b Clock. After they had gone ten Miles, the Wind
and came into the Port *Contra Abehin* ², where turning contrary, they cast Anchor among some
a Galley sunk, in striving to double the Point. Shoals, and stayed there two Days.
- THE** fourteenth, they coasted with a fair Wind, FROM the third to the fourth, the Fleet kept tra-
and cast Anchor in twelve Fathom, at a Place vering off and on the Coast, among certain Sand
called *Almumaskbi*, seventy Miles farther. Banks, with a contrary Wind, and so continued six
Days, without advancing more than eight Miles.
- THE** fifteenth, setting Sail two Hours before c **THE** tenth and eleventh, they kept coasting
Day, the *Moorish* Captain's Galley ran aground with a contrary Wind, ten Miles, and cast An-
on a Bank, but was relieved by the Boats belong- chor in another Place.
- ing to the [*Venetian*] Gallies of *Alexandria*, staid THE thirteenth, they proceeded along the
and turned *Mohammedan*. The Fleet continued Shore, and came up with a Galleon, which had
here two Days
- THE** sixteenth, sailing along the Coast thirty ^e *Yenamani*
Miles, they cast Anchor in the open Sea. *Island*
- THE** seventeenth, they went on by the Shore ^f *Khifafé*.
twenty Miles, and cast Anchor at *Khifafé*.
- THE** nineteenth, they sailed by the Shore fifty
Miles, and came to *Molin*.
- THE** twentieth, they cast Anchor at Sea, c
twenty-five Miles farther.
- THE** twenty-first, proceeding along the Shore
forty-eight Miles ^g, they dropped Anchor at Sea.
- THE** twenty-second, they sailed and cast An-
chor in the same Manner, after advancing ten
Miles.
- THE** twenty-fourth, being in a bad Station,
they departed with a pretty good Wind; the half
Galley having left behind one Anchor, and three
- THE** twenty-fifth, they rowed along the Shore

Kontra
Abclun.Almomuf-
khu.

Raban.

Farfi.

Sathan.

Zorma.

^a In Ramusio's Copy, *Contror Abehin*.^b In Ramusio's Copy, *Roben*.*Jambut* in Ramusio'sCopy; this is *Yembû*, or *Yambo*; the *Italians* using *Y* consonant, instead of *Y*. 'Tis the Port of *Medinat al**Nabî*, that is, the City of the Prophet, meaning *Mohammed* ^d Notwithstanding this Error was so long since
corrected, as well as often since, yet many late Travellers continue it; among the rest, the Jesuit *Nacchi*, in his
Account of the Mission of *Syria*, in the 4th Tome of, *The Memoires des Missions* See *Journey from Aleppo to**Damascus*, p. 70. ^e In Ramusio's Copy, sixty Miles.^f In Ramusio's Copy, *Bubuktor*.^g Forty

Miles in Ramusio's Copy.

1539. Cables; and one Galley ran a-ground, but was ^a not lost. After sailing ten Miles they cast Anchor in eight Fathom Water, and here stayed one Day, because there was good Riding for the Ships.

THE twenty-sixth, proceeding thirty-five Miles along the Coast, they cast Anchor in a Road.*

S E C T. X.

The Fleet passes by al Tûr. Comes to Korondol, Where are the Baths of Moses. Arrive at Suez, and are hauled on Shore. The Red-Sea described. The Venetians return to Kahera. Place where the Dead rise. The Effect of Delusion.

Pass by al Tûr.

THE twenty-seventh, sailing West North-West, at Noon they were up with *Tor*; and continuing their Course two Hours after Night, the Wind turned against them. Wherefore they lay by till Day-break, when the Moorish Captain set sail again; and the other Gallies weighing Anchor, hoist their Fore-sails. After running 100 Miles, they came into shoal Water, where they stayed five Days, in six Fathom

Korondol, Baths of Moses

THE third of *June* the Fleet left the Bank; and, holding on their Course, cast Anchor sometimes on the Coast of the *Abissins* [or rather of *Egypt*] sometimes on the other Side, and the fifteenth they arrived at *Korondol*, where *Pharaoh* and his Host were drowned. At this Place the Fleet took in Water, and here are the Baths of *Moses*, as they are called. In this Place they stayed two Days.

Arrive at Suez

THE sixteenth the Fleet sailed and pursued its Course for two Days together; at the End of which they arrived at *Suez*, whence they set out, and the seventeenth began to draw the Barks on Shore.

THE second of *July* they began to haul their chief Galley on Land, next the *Basha's* half Galley, and then the rest were unrigged and drawn on Shore, in the Order they arrived. The *Christians* were the Porters, and those who worked the Engines in unlading, cleared and unrigged the Vessels. In short, all the Fatigue lay upon them till the sixteenth, when the *Lemin* came and payed off all the Seamen, the *Christians* as well as *Turks*, 180 Maidins each.

The Men paid off.

THE nineteenth of *August* the *Lemin*, accompanied with seven Boats, went to *Tor* to pay off the Gallies, which stayed behind. He took with him the best and strongest *Christians* that were on the Spot, in order to carry those Gallies to

Suez, which were, in a manner, disarmed; as well by reason of the Death of many, as the Flight of others.

At *Tor* all were payed off, and the *Christians* distributed among the Gallies

THE twentieth of *October* the Remainder of the Fleet arrived at *Suez*, and were all drawn on Shore by the Hands of the *Christians*, who wrought hard both Day and Night

THE twenty-sixth an End was made of hauling the Gallies on Land; and the Cables, Rigging, Tackle, Irons, Planks, small Cannon, and other Materials were carried into the Castle.

FROM the Mouth of the *Red-Sea* to *Suez*, *Red Sea* are 1800 Miles, the Coast running North-West all the Way. The Breadth of this Gulph is 200 Miles, and in some Places more. 'Tis full of Banks, Shoals and Shelves towards Land, so that there is no sailing by Night, except in the Middle. The Place is so intricately disposed, that a Person cannot possibly discover the proper Channels, otherwise than by the Eye; or direct the Course to be taken, but by standing at the Prow, and crying Starboard, Larboard^b, and for this Reason the Return cannot be described so well as the setting out. There are two Sorts of Pilots for this Sea; the first those acquainted with the Middle of the Gulph, which is the Course of Navigation outward. The other Sort are for Ships returning from the Ocean, and sail within the Shoals, these are commonly called *Rubati*^c, and are excellent Swimmers. So that in many Places where they cannot cast Anchor, by reason of the bad Ground, they will swim under Water, and fix the Gallies within the Shoals; and oftentimes even fasten the Prows under Water, according to the Nature of the Place.

THE twenty-eighth of *November*, 1539, the *Christians* of the Gallies of *Alexandria* left *Suez*, and the first of *December* arriving at *Kairo*, were lodged in the same House where they were at first. Each was allowed half a Maidin a Day, which is equivalent to two Pence of *Venice*; so that they suffered great Affliction and Fatigue. For every Time it happened that the Cisterns were to be cleansed, Hills made plain, Gardens put in Order, Buildings raised, or the like, all the Labour fell upon the *Christians*.

THE twenty-fifth of *March*, 1540, many of those *Christians* went from *Kairo*, with a Guard of *Turks*, to a Hill or Mount two Miles from the *Nile*, which, to the Author, seemed to be a Burying-place, like *Campo Santo*: Where every

* In *Ramusio*, *Emin*. The *Emin* is an Officer of the Treasury, or Pay-master. These are the Ropes at the Ends of the Yards, which are drawn, on pronouncing these Words. In *Ramusio's* Copy, *Rubani*. Which is the truer Reading; *Rubân*, in *Arabic*, signifying a Pilot.

^b Orza *Poggia*.
^c In

1539
Soleymán
Bashá.

Year, the *Friday* before our Lady of *August* ^a, a vast Number of People assemble to see dead Bodies rise out of the Ground. This Resurrection begins on *Thursday* Evening, and lasts till *Saturday* at six o'Clock; during which Time great Numbers rise. But after that no more appear. Yet when they appear, you shall see some rolled up in Linen, others lying down, and wrapped about with Bandages, in the Manner the Ancients swathed their Dead. Don't imagine you will see them move, much less walk. But you shall this Instant observe one, and touch an Arm, Leg, or any other Part of it; and then, going away for a Moment, on your Return shall find the Part so touched, somewhat more exposed, and farther out of the Ground than it was at first. This will happen as often as you make the Experiment ^b. To be plain, on that Day many Tents are pitched about the Mount, and thither repair abundance of Sick, as well as healthy People: Because near the Place there is a Pond, where, on the *Friday* Night, they wash themselves in order to be cured of their Infirmiti-
But for my Part, says the Author, I did not see those Miracles.

CHAP. XVII.

The Siege of Diu, by Soleymán Bashá of Egypt, in 1539.

S E C T. I.

Occasion of the Expedition. Character of Soleymán Bashá. His Tyranny. Account of Khojah Zaffar. The City quitted. The Castle besieged. Soleymán arrives with the Turkish Fleet. A Bulwark surrendered. Female Courage. Poverty of the Men. Great Distress of the Besieged.

THIS Siege of *Diu*, being one of the most remarkable that has happened of late Ages, and but in Part related in the foregoing Voyage, we shall, to compleat it, give the Reader the *Portuguese* Account thereof: Who, it must be allowed, were better able to inform us concerning what passed at Land, and especially in their own Quarters, than those on board the *Turkish* Fleet. This Transaction, filled with surprising Instances of human Resolution and Valour, is beautifully described by *de Faria y Sousa*, from whom we have extracted it; adding from *de Barros*, *Maffi*, and other Writers, what we judged

a further necessary to illustrate the Subject. The Date of each Action, which our Authors have omitted to set down, may be supplied from the foregoing Voyage.

THE Present sent by *Badur*, King of *Kambaya*, to *Soleymán*, the magnificent Emperor of the *Turks*, to obtain Succour from him ^c, was delivered together with the News of his Death. The great Value of this Present demonstrated to that Prince the vast Riches of *India*, and stirred up in him a Desire of becoming Master of it. He thought it might be in his Power to expel the *Portuguese* in the East; and one of them, a Renegade, then at *Constantinople*, promoted the Design, by representing it easy to be executed.

THE Soltan ordered a Fleet to be fitted, and *Soleymán* gave the Command of it to the Eunuch *Soleymán Bashá*, Governor of *Kairo*. This *Soleymán* was a *Greek* Janissary, born in the *Moræa*; his Age eighty Years, of Stature short, his Face ugly, and Belly so big, he was more like a Beast than a Man; and could not rise up without the Help of four. His Purse purchased him this Command, offering the *Turk* to furnish the Shipping at his own Expence. The better to perform this, he put to Death many rich Men, in order to seize their Estates. Among others he hanged *Amir Dawd* (that is, Prince *David*) ^d King of *Upper Egypt*, after taking from him a great Sum of Money. The Fleet was got ready by *Ibrahim*, a considerable Officer under him; and consisted of seventy Sail, most large Gallies, well stored with Cannon, Ammunition, and Provisions. In them were embarked 7000 Land Soldiers, *Turks* and *Mamlúks*, besides the Seamen and Slaves. Many of which latter were taken out of the *Venetian* Gallies, then seized at *Alexandria*; the Peace made by *Bajazet* (or *Bayezid*) in the Year 1503, being newly broken.

SOLEYMAN having set out, committed his Villanies natural to a Tyrant and Coward, as he was. He caused four hundred Soldiers to be put to the Oars; and because they complained, put to Death two hundred ^e. He thought to have taken the King of *Jidda*; but he, who well knew him, retired with the Inhabitants. At *Zebit* after receiving a rich Present, he beheaded the King, *Nokada Hamed*, with a Hatchet. At *Aden* he pretended he had many sick Men on board, and having obtained Houses in the Town from the King to lodge them in, conveyed Soldiers in Beds, counterfeiting Sicknefs, on Shore. These at a Sign given from the Fleet, seized the City

^a Which falls on the fifteenth of that Month Part I chap. 11 p 145. wonders at the Superstition, declaring the whole to be a palpable Delusion. to the Description mentioned before, p. 89. d.

^b M. De Thevenot, in his Travels to the Levant, Folly, and Credulity of People on this Occasion, declaring the whole to be a palpable Delusion. See before, p. 83. c.

^c This Passage seems to relate

1539.
Soleymán in
Bashá

and the King; who, being carried to the Fleet, ^a *Soleymán* asked him how it came to pass that he had neglected coming, contrary to his Duty, for three Days. The King's Answer having been freer than his Ears were accustomed to, he caused him to be hanged at the Yard-arm of his Ship. About the Beginning of September the *Bishá* arrived before *Diu*, having left six Ships by the Way. He was by his Instructions to have visited *Goa* first, but, on farther Thoughts, had changed that Design.^a

Khajá Zul-
"ur

WHEN King *Badur* was killed upon the Sea with some of his Retinue, one *Khajab Zofar* (or *Zaffar*^b) swam to Shore, and was well received by the *Portugueze*, who put all others to the Sword. He upon several Occasions shewed himself so grateful, that *Nuno de Cunha* much favoured, and recommended him earnestly to *Antonio de Silveira*. At last, without any Provocation he fled from *Diu* to *Mahmúd*, the new King of *Kambaya*, offering his Service, and persuading him to War upon the *Portugueze*; affirming it would be easy to drive them from that Coast, with the Assistance of the *Turkish* Fleet, which he knew would soon be there. The King with this Encouragement forms a Body of 5000 Horse, and 10,000 Foot at *Champanel*, the Place of his Residence. The first who appeared was *Khajab Zofar*, with 3000 Horse, and 4000 Foot, which he maintained at his own Charge, knowing it is suspicious to advise dangerous Enterprizes, and not have Part in them. *Antonio de Silveira*, having Notice hereof, provided for a long and dangerous Siege.

Beshá of Diu

KHOJAH ZOFAR made the first Breach, falling upon the Town of the *Rúms*, near *Diu*, where he did much Harm. *Francisco Pacheco* defended himself bravely in a Bulwark with fourteen *Portugueze*, till he was relieved by *Antonio de Silveira*, and *Zofar* obliged to draw off, being wounded in the Arm. At the same Time appears *Alu Khán*, the King of *Kambaya*'s General, with all the Army; who, in Conjunction with *Zofar*, sat down before the Passes. Which Posts, on their Approach, *Antonio de Silveira* gave Orders should be quitted by his Officers, the better to maintain the City and Fort. In the Execution whereof they lost some Ships and Guns.

The City
quitted.

By reason of this Loss, and because there were many private Enemies, who only waited an Opportunity of shewing their Malice, *Silveira* could not maintain the City. Some he hanged, and then retired to the Fort; always taking the Advice of his Captains. *Alu Khán* and *Khajab Zofar* presently possessed themselves of the

a City and Island, abandoned by the *Portugueze*, and began to play their Shot vigorously. *Lepi de Sousa*, who guarded the Wood and Water, whereof the Fort stood in need, had several Rencontres, and slew many of the Enemy, without losing one Man, but was himself much wounded. *Antonio de Silveira* hearing of the Approach of the *Turkish* Fleet, with Speed sent Advice thereof to *Nuno de Cunha*. The Answer was, the Diligence wherewith he prepared to relieve him in Person.

MICHAEL VAZ, a resolute Man, sent by *Silveira* to discover, saw the Enemies Fleet, and, the better to view it, came up so near, that their Shot reached his Vessel. However he got off, and carried the News to the Governor at *Goa*. The Fleet came to an Anchor in the Harbour, and was now formidable, not only to those few *Portugueze*, but even to the *Moor*, who had expected it. Next Day *Soleymán* landed 600 Janizaries, well accoutred, and armed with Bows and Muskets to terrify the Beholders. They entered the City, and there acted all the Insolencies used by Soldiers. Then drawing near the Fort, they killed six *Portugueze*, but 300 of their Musketeers advancing, killed fifty of them, and forced the rest to retire.^c

A Storm obliged *Soleymán* to remove to *Madresfat*^d, a safer Harbour, five Leagues from *Diu*.

There he continued twenty Days, in which Time *Silveira* improved the Fortifications, planted his Artillery, and assigned every Man his Post. The same was done by the *Tinks*, assisted by *Khajab Zofar*. Some of their Cannon played upon a Bulwark, to burn which they built a wooden Castle on a great Bark, filled with combustible Matter. But *Francisco de Gouvea*, who had his Command by Sea, went out by Night, and with great Difficulty got to, and burnt, it. At this Time came some Relief sent by *Nuno de Cunha*; yet the greatest Comfort they brought, was the Hopes of his coming after in Person.

SOLETMAN returns from *Madresfat*, and fires his Cannon upon the Bulwark where *de Gouvea* commanded, from whence, and from St. Thomas's Tower, he was so well answered, that one of his Gallies sunk, with most of the Men. The greatest Harm the *Portugueze* received, was from their own Cannon, which burst, and slew some. For the Enemy only killed two Brothers, whose Mother (named *Barbara*) took them in her Arms, and carried off the Bodies, without shedding a Tear. *Zofar* now furiously battered the Bulwark^e, commanded by *Pacheco*, which he rendered not tenable. 700 Janizaries assaulted it, and set up their Colours;

^a See *de Barros* and *Maffi*. ^b He was originally a *Christian* of *Scio*, had been Treasurer of *Egypt*, and fled to *Diu* with *Mustáfa*, in whose Affair (mentioned *p* 80. *b*) he was concerned. ^c See before, *p* 93. ^d *Maffi* calls it *Madra Jaba*, rather *Madasser Abád*. See before, *p* 93. Note. ^e Called the *Rúms* Castle, according to *Maffi* but

1539.
Soleymán
Bashá

Female Cou-
rage.

1539 but some of the scattered *Portugueze* advancing, a
Soleymán fell on, dislodged them, and killed 150. The
Batus Dispute lasted all Day, and the Enemy drew off
with Shame, for the Weight of this Action lay upon two resolute Gentlemen.

Next Day Pacheco, in Despair, surrendered.
The Enemy enter the Bulwark, cast down the
Christian Colours, and set up the *Turkish*. Juan
Perez, a Man in Years, enraged hereat, throws
down the *Turkish*, and again tears the *Christian*
Ensigns. But the Enemy pressing, he and five
Portugueze more, who joined him, were all
killed upon the Spot, and their Bodies cast into
the Sea, which laid them at the Gate of the
Fort, where they were honourably buried. Pacheco
and those with him had articles for Life
and Liberty. Yet the latter was not performed at
all by Soleymán, and the first but for a while.
However he gave them *Turkish* Vests, and sent
one of them to summon *Silviera* to surrender:
Who made a Jest of the Proposal.

SOLEYMÁN enraged at this Contempt,
prepared to batter the Fort, and planted his Ar-
tillery in several Places, under the Direction of
Zofar. Among the Cannon (about 130 in all,
guarded by 2000 *Turks*) were nine Pieces of
wonderful Bigness, carrying a Ball of above ninety
Pounds Weight. Besides several other Sizes.
Upon Monday the fourth of October, the Battery
began, and continued violently twenty Days,
doing great Harm to the Fort, from whence lit-
tle Damage could be done: Nor were the Besieged
scarce able to repair the most dangerous Breaches,
notwithstanding all Art and Diligence was employed.

THE sixth Day after they began to batter,
the *Turks* perceiving Gaspar de Sousa's Bulwark
much damaged, thought to carry it, but many
of them were killed in the Attempt, with the
Loss of two *Portugueze*. Every Day there was
Action. Gonçalo Falcão had his Head shot off.
c Juan Fonseca being wounded in the right Arm,
held his Lance with the left, as if he had received
no Hurt. Juan, the Gallego, a Youth of
nineteen, of a little Body, but great Heart, pursued
a Moor into the Sea, till losing Ground, he
was like to drown; which the Moor perceiving,
laid hold on him to kill him: But he recovering
himself, without losing Gun or Sword, slew his
Adversary, and came out all bloody; walking
leisurely towards the Fort, while Showers of
Bullets flew about him. Many other singular
Acts of Valour were performed this Siege.

BUT by this Time many brave Gentlemen
had been killed in the Fort. Powder grew
short, the Provisions shorter: The Relief of the
Vice-Roy Don Garcia de Noronha, now arrived,

in India, moved slow. The neighbouring Forts
sent no Aid, and all began to be in Confusion:
Which was increased by a Sickness (caused by the
bad Water) that hindered most from swallowing
the little Provision they had, swelling the Gums
and loosening the Teeth; so that they fell out.
In fine, the *Portugueze* fought and suffered as if
the greatest Misery could not overcome them.

1539.
Soleymán
Bathâ.

SECT. II.

Valour of the *Portugueze* Women. De Sousa fights
on his Stumps. The Siege pressed hard. General
Attack. A Bulwark entered, and recovered.
Soleymán raises the Siege by Zaffar's Artifice.
Murders 146 *Portugueze*. He goes to Constantinople and kills himself. The Miseries of
the Besieged owing to the Vice-Roy.

HERE let us celebrate the Valour of the
Portugueze Women. Donna Isabel de Vega,
a Woman of great Virtue, and some Beauty,
was Wife to Manuel de Vescencelos; who,
fearing the Fort might be lost, and she taken
by the *Turks*, earnestly intreated her to go to her
father, Francisco Serram at Goa. But she begged
not to be parted from him, which, with much
Regret, at last he consented to. This Heroine,
considering there were many Men employed in
the Works who might fight, and their Places be
supplied by as many Women, assembled all of
that Sex who were in the Fort, and having ex-
horted them to undertake that Labour, to the
End so many Men might be added to the Number
of their Defendants, they all cheerfully complied,
and followed her as their Leader, with Anne Fernandez,
to whom she had before communicated her Design.
This Anne was Wife to a Physician, and so courageous,
that by Night she viewed all the Posts, and appeared at Assaults,
encouraging the Soldiers. Her Son being killed
in her Sight, she drew him away; and returning
to her Post, when the Service was over, went to
bury him.

GASPARO DE SOUSA perceiving the
Turks undermined his Bulwark, sallied with seventy
Men to view their Work; which he did, and made
great Slaughter among them. At his Retreat, missing
two Men, he turned back upon the Enemy, and fought
bravely, but, being surrounded, was hamstrung.
Yet still he defended himself on his Knees, till
oppressed by the Multitude. The Mine was countermined;
but the continual Labour became insupportable, and
it was impossible to repair so many Ruins.

AT this Juncture arrived four Vessels, sent by
the Vice-Roy, Don Garcia de Noronha, which

The Venetian Officers Account, makes some above three Times that Weight. See before, p. 95 c.

2 brought

1539. brought only twenty Men. *Soleyman* was concerned at this Succour, tho' small, but much more that the Fort stood so many Assaults; *Khojah Zofar* having affirmed, he would carry it at two. At the Beginning of the Siege, there were no more than 600 Men in the Fort, of whom many were killed, and some Cannon burst. But the *Bashâ* little encouraged thereby, still looked toward the Sea, fearful of the *Portugueze* Fleet; which he heard was coming upon him.

*The Siege
prolonged*

THIS moved him to press the Siege with more Vigour. The Bulwark of the Sea, where *Antonio de Sousa* commanded, was furiously attacked with fifty Barks, two whereof were sunk by the Cannon of the Castle. Then they attempted to scale it, and were repulsed with great Slaughter. The Assault was repeated, and still the Enemy came off with Loss. Among the wounded Men, sent to be dressed, *Fernan Penteado* was one; who, while he waited his Turn, heard the Noise of a fresh Attack, and forgetting the Dressing, run thither, and received another Wound: The very same happened to him the third time, and then he was dressed of all three. By this Time, there were left in the Fort but 250 of the 600 Men, fit to bear Arms.

*Agitated
and on the
walls.*

SOLEYMAN now in Despair, resolved to make one Push for all. The better to succeed in his Design, he counterfeited raising the Siege; and twelve Gallies put to Sea, that *Silveira* might be the easier surprised: But that vigilant Commander kept still upon his Guard, as much as ever. One Night some Noise being heard, at the Foot of the Wall by Water, it was found that the Enemy were applying great Numbers of scaling Ladders. They were opposed till Morning appeared, which shewed the Place beset round, and assaulted by 14,000 Men. They began by playing the Cannon, and then mounted on all Sides, chiefly next the Commandant's House, where it was weakest; but he had posted such Men there, as made a terrible Slaughter of them. Having failed in this Place, they attempted a Bulwark, pouring in Showers of Arrows and Bullets. Great was the Confusion and Havock on both Sides. In the Interim, came up fourteen Gallies, furiously discharging their great Shot, but do no Execution. At length, *Francisco Gouvea* made them draw off; having battered two, and killed some Men with his Cannon.

*A Bulwark
erected.*

By this Time, 200 *Turks* had entered the Bulwark, and planted their Colours. Scarce thirty *Portugueze* were there, to oppose them. But they rushing on desperately, to regain the

a Work, none of their Shot were lost, the Enemy being very thick, so that having sustained great Damage, such as were in this Action draw off. However, fresh Men succeed, and set up four Colours. The *Portugueze* wounded and burnt, ran for Ease, and dipped themselves in Jars of salt Water, where seeking Refreshment, they perished with hellish Torture. *Antonio de Silveira* indefatigably repaired to every Place, encouraging all. Here a Soldier, wanting Ball, pulled out one of his Teeth, to load his Musket. The Enemy had much the better, this second Assault, which a few Gentlemen perceiving, furiously rushed upon them. *Juan Rodrigues*, a Man of great Body, and as great Courage, ran out with a Barrel of Powder, crying, *Clear the Way; for here I carry my own, and many a Man's Death.* He threw the Barrel among the Enemy, and suddenly above a hundred were carried up into the Air, torn in Pieces. Twenty lay burnt upon the Ground; yet *Rodrigues* himself came off unhurt, and doing other considerable Actions, deserved some of the first Rewards and Honours, gained this Siege.

1539.
*Soleyman
balked*

OTHER Fireworks burnt the four Ensigns, who had set up the Colours. Two of our Cannon cleared the Place of Enemies, and two Bullets threw down two Ensigns, that succeeded the former. The Enemy withdraws, and fresh Supplies come on the third Time, and place their Colours. The Commander of these, Son-in-law to *Khojah Zofar*, being killed, his Men were dismayed, and turned their Backs. These Assaults lasted above four Hours: The same small Number of *Portugueze* withstanding still fresh, and numerous Detachments, while their Women in the Fort, and those of the Enemy on the City Walls, were Spectators of the whole Action. The *Portugueze* all smeared with Powder, appeared like *Moors*, and were known by their Cloaths and Voice, not Colour: So black was their Hue wrought with Fire, Blood and Sweat, that every one looked as if he came out of Hell. At length the Enemy retired, carrying off above 1000 wounded, and leaving more than 500 Men killed. Of the *Portugueze* 14 were killed, and 200 lay useless for want of Blood: Only 40 remained able to bear Arms, and the Weapons lay broken to Pieces about the Ground; some serving such as could not stand on their Legs, for Crutches. No Hope was left, if the Enemy renewed the Attack; the Walls were all shattered, and the Powder spent. Nothing but Horror appeared; only the brave *Silveira's* Countenance was what encouraged all Men.

* It must be remembered, that the Teeth of many were loose, with the Scurvy, or some such Distemper.

VOL. I.

No. 5.

P

SOLE

1539.
Soleyman
Bashâ.

Soleyman
raises the
Siege.

SOLEYMAN put an End to all these Calamities. For not knowing the Condition the Fortrefs was in, and terrified with such Ill Success, he raised the Siege^a. *Antonio de Silveira*, seeing them weigh Anchor, and hoist Sail, thought it was only another Feint, and prepared to resist, as if he had any Thing to trust to. He posted the forty Men, and caused some, that were wounded, to lean against the Walls, to shew a Number. Those who could not rise, ordered themselves to be carried in their Beds, saying, it was to die in an honourable Place. Some of the Women also armed themselves, and appeared upon the Works. The Night was spent upon the Watch, but the Morning was more comfortable to the Afflicted. For *Soleyman* was withdrawn in earnest, without any Thought of returning.

By means of
Zafar.

Tho' Fear did much, yet a Device of *Khejah Zofar* did more towards removing the Bashâ. *Zofar* was moved to it, as well by the unportable Pride of that *Turk*, as an Order, he had from his King, that in case he found the Bashâ intended to keep that City and Fort (as was feared) he should rather endeavour to leave it to the *Portuguese*. To effect this, he framed a Letter, intimating, that the Vice-Roy of *India* would be there the next Day, with a vast Fleet. Which falling into *Soleyman's* Hand, as was designed, he thought fit not to delay his Departure, and so sailed away, on the fifth of *November*, after Two Months Leaguer, having lost 3000 Men. The same Night, *Zofar's* Men fired the City, and marched off. This was the first Siege of *Diu*, which was admired throughout the World, and added new Lustre to the *Portuguese* Glory; all due to the invincible Courage and Vigilance of the ever renowned *Antonio de Silveira*, and these valiant Gentlemen, who were with him.

Soleyman's
Cruelty and
Deeds

SOLEYMAN touched at the Ports, on the Coast of *Arabia*, and took up some *Portuguese*, he found there. He gathered above 140, and cutting off their Heads, then their Ears and Noses, salted and sent them to the Great *Turk*, to shew what he had done. Among these was *Francisco Pacheco*, who had not the Courage to die like a Gentleman in his Bulwark. *Soleyman* being arrived at *Constantinople*, and not well agreeing with one who aspired to his Post, was reduced to kill himself. Cruel and tyrannical Men should always be their own Executioners.

The Vice-
Roy's insa-
nious Conduct.

THIS famous Siege was so far advanced, when the Vice-Roy Don *Garcia de Normba* arrived in *India*, to whom *Nuno de Cuna* immediately re-

^a *Maffi* says, he was terrified, with the Appearance of sixteen *Portuguese* Ships, each carrying four Lights, to make them seem more numerous; which sailed towards *Mudra faba* in the Night. ^b This must be meant of *Soleyman's* raising the Siege, which the Author of *Soleyman's* Voyage, wholly imputes to the Coming of this Fleet; for the Bashâ did not stir till he had News of its near Approach and even of its Appearance: And this seems to be confirmed by the preceding Note.

sign'd the Government. His Arrival (with so considerable Relief as he brought) might well have bettered the Affairs of *Diu*; yet, on the contrary, it much endamaged them. For had he not come, *de Cuna* had relieved *Diu*, with eighty Sail, he had in a readiness for that Purpose, and prevented so many Miseries, and the Death of so many brave Men. Still fresh Advice was brought of the Danger the besieged were in, and still Don *Garcia* wasted the Time, in considering of Means to relieve them. Choosing rather to commit an Error thro' his own Wistfulness (for he did not want Courage) than act rightly, by the Advice of *de Cuna*, for which he deserved an ignominious Death. Thus the Siege was raised, before he pitched on the Method of relieving the Place, and the Expence of Preparations thrown away.

ANTONIO DE SYLIA MENESES was the second sent with Succours, being twenty small Vessels, and came too late. Yet he contended with *Silveira* for the Honour of that Victory^b. The Vice-Roy was still at *Goa*, tho' ready to sail, with a Fleet of 160 Sail of several Sorts, and in them 5000 fighting Men, and 1000 Cannon, when Advice came, that the *Turks* had raised the Siege. On this News, he set out with 90 Ships; but moved so slowly, as if he did not care to go thither. Hearing at *Dabul*, that *Alu Khân* and *Khejah Zafar* still ranged about with Fire and Sword, he sent against them *Martin Alfonso de Melo* with his Galley, and the Vessels that went with *de Sylva*. But being hard set by the Enemy, he was forced to take Shelter under the Castle. The Vice-Roy, at the same slow Rate, sailed on to *Bazaim*, nothing moved, with the News he received from *Diu*.

It was whispered about that he either consulted his Safety or private Interest. Let what would be the Cause, his Actions justify'd the worst of Suspitions. But when least expected, he steer'd for *Diu*, on the first of *January*. When a Storm rising, which lasted eight Days, his Fleet was dispersed into several Ports, and several Vessels, with two Gallies, lost; so that he entered but with fifty Sail. A Treaty of Peace was presently set on Foot, and concluded little to the Advantage of the *Portuguese*, which common Fame attributed to Covetousness.

THE great *Antonio de Silveira*, soon after, returned for *Portugal*, and had scarce anchored at *Lisbon*, when the great Men of the Court came to conduct him to the King, and Princes; who

1539.
Soleyman
Bashâ

with

1540. with Joy waited to see, and honour him. Nor is this to be wondered at, since all the Princes of Europe visited him by their Ambassadors, being led by the Admiration of his glorious Exploits. The French Minister had his Picture drawn, which was hung up in the Gallery of Fame, among the other Heroes. He was of a middle Statute, strong build, of a clear Judgment, ready Wit, a great Heart, and very liberal. His Bounty did as much at *Diu*, as his Valour; for 'tis vain (says *de Faria*) for a Miser ever to expect to purchase glorious Victories. Yet this Virtue was prejudicial to him in *Portugal*. For the King having appointed him Governor of *India*, was dissuaded by some, who said, that *Empire was too little for his Bounty*.

C H A P. XVI.

The Voyage of Don Stefano de Gama, from Goa, to Suez, in 1540 with Intent to burn the Turkish Gallies in that Port.

Written by Don Juan de Castro, then a Captain in the Fleet. Afterwards Governor and Vice-Roy of India.

Translated from the Portuguese, and abbreviated. Some previous Remarks on this Voyage, and the Journal.

A Memoir of the Author. DON John de Castro, Author of the following Journal, was a Portuguese Nobleman, born in 1500, being the Son of *Alvaro de Castro*, Governor of the Chancery, and of *Donna Leonora de Noronha*, Daughter of *Don Juan de Almeyda*, Count of *Abrantes*. In his Youth he served at *Tangier*, and returning home, had a Commodity valued at 500 Ducats a Year, conferred on him, which was all that a Man of his Birth and Merit, was ever worth. He served afterwards under the Emperor *Charles the Fifth*, in the Expedition against *Tunis*, and refused his Part of a Present in Money, which that Prince made to the Portuguese Officers, saying, *he served the King of Portugal, and of him expected his Reward*. After this, he commanded a Fleet, upon the Coast, and was sent with another, to the Relief of *Ceuta*, which joined that of *Spain*. The Spaniards hearing, that the Moors were approaching, would needs draw off, to consult concerning the Manner of giving Battle. But Don John refused to stir. The Moors not knowing the Fleets were parted, retired; and Don John remained with the Honour of this Action.

Don John de Castro. WHEN Don Garcia de Noronha went Vice-Roy to *India*, Don John was Captain of one of

his Ships. Being ready to go on board, the King sent him a Grant of the Command of *Ormuz*, and 1000 Ducats a Year, till he was in Possession. The last he accepted, because he was poor, and refused the first, saying, *He had not yet deserved it*. After the Expedition to *Suez*, he returned to *Portugal*, and lived retired in a Country-house he built near *Coimbra*, giving himself up intirely to his Studies. From this Retreat, he was called by the Advice of the Infant, Don Luis, and sent Governor to *India* in 1545, where he died, with the Title of Vice-Roy, in 1548, when he was 48 Years of Age. We shall have Occasion, hereafter, to speak farther of this great Man, who made himself famous in the second Siege of *Diu*, by the King of *Kambaya's* Forces. In his Life, written by *Jacinto Freire de Andrada*, there is a particular Account of this Siege, with a Map to illustrate it. The Author treats also of the Discoveries, Government, Commerce, and other Affairs of the Portuguese in the East, and gives a Description of *India*, and *China*. This Book was translated into English, and published in Folio at London in 1664.

SUCH was the illustrious Author of the following Journal, which never was published in Portuguese. But having been found (if we are rightly informed) on board a Portuguese Ship, taken by the English, was afterwards translated, and published by *Purchas*. Who tells us, that the Original was reported to have been bought at the Rate of sixty Pounds, by Sir *Walter Raleigh*; also that Sir *Walter* had it translated out of the Portuguese, and afterwards (as he thinks) amended the Diction, besides adding many marginal Notes. *Purchas* himself reformed the Style, but with Caution (not having the Original to consult) and abbreviated the whole, in which, we hope, he used no less Circumspection. For it is still (as it stands in that Author) most intolerably verbose, and at the same Time, in very many Places, scarce intelligible, owing, we apprehend, to the Translator's not entering sufficiently into the Meaning of the Original, if not to the Fault of the Abridger. These two Inconveniences, we have endeavoured to remedy the best we could, and tho' we have not always been able to clear up the Sense, yet presume, we have for the most Part succeeded; and by quite changing the Language (except where the Places were obscure) made the Journal more fit for Reading, without doing the Matter any Injury.

THIS Expedition was undertaken for two Ends. One to carry Succours to the Emperor of

^a Our Author, *de Faria y Sousa* says, he went up to Mount *Sinay*, where his Son *Don Alvaro*, was knighted: But this does not appear from his Journal. ^b *Pilgrims*, Vol. 2 p. 1122, under the Title of *A Rutter*, [or Journal] of *Don John de Castro*, of the Voyage, which the Portuguese made from *India* to *Zoez*, dedicated to the most Illustrious Prince the Infant *Don Luis*, and here abbreviated, &c. It takes up twenty-six Pages.

1540. the *Habash*, or *Abissins*; and the other to destroy a he resolved in Person, and in open Day, to discover the Gallies. He saw them, and desiring to do something considerable, Landed. The Enemy's Shot poured thick from the Town, and 2000 *Turkish* Horse broke out of an Ambush. But although the *Portuguese* Cannon slew some of them, they were themselves obliged to retreat, much grieved, that their Voyage was disappointed.

1540.
De Castro

Strength of the Fleet. THE Governor's great Liberality brought him more Men than he desired, whereof he chose the best. The Fleet consisted of 80 Sail of sundry Sorts and Sizes, and carried 2000 Men. When he came into the *Red Sea*, he found most of the Islands and Cities abandoned, the Inhabitants having had Notice of his Coming. At *Swäken* the King, who was retired a League up the Country, entertained *de Gama* with Shews of Peace, that he might not destroy the Island. And this Delay prevented his destroying the Ships at *Suez*, as it afforded Time enough, to carry thither the News of this Design.

Swäken and

al Kofsir burnt

DE GAMA, in Revenge, marched with his Brother *Don Christopher*, and 1000 Men, and made a great Slaughter. Then, after plundering the City (where private Men got 4 or 5000 Ducats each) burnt it to the Ground. From hence he departed towards *Suez* with only sixteen *Katürs* or Barges, and sent the rest of the Fleet to *Massua*, under the Command of *Lionel de Lima*. There was a great Dispute on this Occasion, each striving to go on this Expedition; whence the Bay was called *de los Agraviados*, or, *of the Offended*. Many Gentlemen went in the Barges as private Soldiers; accepting any Place, so they were admitted. The Number of Men was 250.

al Kofsir burnt

At *al Kofsir*, they did the same as had been done at *Swäken*. Crossing over to *Tor*, or *al Tür*, they took some Vessels of the Enemy. The *Turks*, at first, opposed their Landing, but some being slain, the rest abandoned the City, in which nothing of Value was found. The Governor would not burn it, in Reverence to St. *Catharine*, and a Monastery found there, with Religious Men, under her Invocation; which at their Request he visited. He was the first *European* Commander, who took that City, where he knighted several, an Honour much priz'd by those who received it, and envied afterwards by the Emperor *Charles V.* himself.

Landed at Suez and visited it.

DE GAMA from hence passed on to *Suez*; and after many brave, but fruitless Attempts, made by several, to sound and view the Harbour,

Thus far, relating to the Design, and Success of the Expedition, we judged proper to mention, from *de Faria y Sousa*, and other Authors: Because *De Castro's* Journal is almost wholly confined to Observations of the Places, and gives little or no Light into these Particulars, which yet we presume the Reader will think necessary to be known.

WITH regard to the *Rutter* itself, it must be allowed to be a very curious one. The Author, like an exact and diligent Navigator, has not only given the Course, and Distance of one Place from another, with the Latitude of the principal Ports and Capes, but observes the minute Windings of the Coast, and Situation of Islands, with the Nature of the Tides, Currents, Shoals, Sand-Banks, and other Particulars relating to the *Red-Sea*. Yet, far from confining himself to mere nautical Remarks, he hath given us a Description of the Places, wherever he came, and even of the Country and Inhabitants, so far as he was able to collect from his own Observation, or Enquiry from others, particularly the Natives.

DON JOHN hath gone farther yet, and attempted to draw the Parallel between the ancient and modern Geography of this Sea. If in all Points he may not have succeeded, the great Difficulty of the Task, from the Obscurity of the Subject, is to be considered; most ancient Places being destroyed, the Names of others long since out of Use, and very little of those Coasts known to *Europeans*, even at this Day. However, for these Reasons, the Conjectures being often erroneous, and at best, very uncertain, we shall, for the most Part, insert them by Way of Notes, with our own Remarks thereon. Whether the Altitudes have been taken with that Precision, which Geography requires, may also in some Measure be questioned; since we find there was a Crack in the Instrument, the Size of which is not mentioned, nor were all the Observations repeated; and if they had been, we are sensible that those made formerly, are not so accurate as those made of late Years. However, they seem to have been made with a good deal of Care, and must needs be of great Service to the Geographer.

* This is *d. Faria's* Account, but *Bermudes* says, the Reason he did not succeed in his Design, was, because he could not come at the Ships, being drawn on Land; see *Peregrinus Pilgrims*, Vol. 2. p. 1150; as in Fact we find they had been, by the Author of the Voyage of *Soleymán Basha*. See before, p. 101. a.

1540. ^{De Castro.} IT is only by the Observations contained in ^{the} this Journal, that Geographers are able to determine the Extent of the *Arabi. Gulf*, or *Red-Sea*, from North to South, as well as the Situation of its principal Ports on the West Side. The Latitude of the Streights was verified by the Observations of *Don John's* Pilot. But because most Maps and Charts give *Suez* (at the farther End of the Gulf) a Situation different from what this Journal has marked, which is 29°. 45' it may not be amiss to examine it. By several very accurate Observations, in 1694, M. *Chazelles*, of the Royal Academy of Sciences at *Paris*, found the Latitude of *Kairo* to be 30°. 2'. 20". The Difference of Latitude between these two Places then will be seventeen Minutes, which, we conceive, cannot be far from the Truth, if not quite exact, since Dr. *Pocock's* Map makes the Difference about twenty Minutes. 'Tis true, in *Suard's* Map of *Egypt*, and the late *French* Chart of the Eastern Ocean, *Suez* is placed only two or three Minutes more Southward than *Kairo*. But as the Authors had no new Observation, made at the former Place, to go by, and seem to have been quite Strangers to *Don John's*, their Authority can weigh but little against an express Observation, and a Map drawn, as Dr. *Pocock's* was, (among other Helps) from one made by the Natives. Besides, *De L'Isle*, in his latter Maps, regulates the Situation of *Suez*, according to the Latitude found by *Don John*, and indeed, *Suard* places it about the same Parallel, but then he mistakes egregiously in the Latitude of *Kairo*, which shews he has given it that Position more by Chance than Design.

THIS may suffice to support the Credit of the Author's Observations of the Latitude, till new ones can be made, which we are not to expect in Haste; *European* Ships, at present, rarely sailing higher than *Mekka* or *Zabid*. For which Reason, this Journal is the more to be prized. For the rest, it is full of Variety, and if some Articles be dry, Amends is made by their Usefulness to Geographers and Navigators, as well as the Pleasure others afford.

S E C T. I.

The Fleet leaves Goa, and comes to Sokotra. The Island described. Hill of Aden. Streights of Baboalmandub. They enter the Red-Sea.

The Fleet leaves Goa

THE thirty-first of *December*, 1540, at Sunrise, they departed from the Bar of *Goa*, towards the Streights [of *Mekka*,] the Wind was Easterly from the Land, and they advanced

a bearing but little Sail: About ten, they came to an Anchor at the River *Chapraa*.

1541. *De Castro.*

THE thirteenth of *January*, 1541, in the Morning, they saw a great Quantity of *Ouze*, that grows upon the Rocks of the Sea, and a little while after, a Snake. The Sun being up, they descried the Island of *Sokatora*, in Search of which they went, bearing due South.

DON JOHN, on examining the principal Pilots of the Fleet, how far, by their Reckonings, they were off Land, the Day they saw it, found that the chief Pilot made it ninety Leagues, the Pilot of the Galleon, *Busora*, one hundred and odd; and the others, eighty, those nearest the Matter, were seventy Leagues short, except his own Pilot, who computed it but sixty-five. They all wondered how the Error could be so great, and either that it was so, or to save their Credits, alleged, that the Way was shorter than the Charts made it. The *Moorish* Pilots joined with them, affirming, that from *Goa* to *Sokatora*, there were no more than three hundred Leagues.

SOKATORA is twenty Leagues in Length, and nine in Breadth, and stands in twelve Degrees forty Minutes North. The Northern Coast runneth East and West, inclining somewhat to the North-West, and South-East. The Shore is quite clear from Rocks and Shoals, or any other Impediment to Sailing. The Ground in the Road is Sand, and in some Places, stony, but not so as to cut the Cables. Yet there is no other Place or Harbour throughout the Island, where Ships may safely winter. On this Side, the North Wind bloweth so violently, as to drive great Heaps of Sand over the highest Hills. The Coast is very high, and begirt with huge and craggy Mountains. The Tides here are contrary to those of *India*. For when the Moon appeareth on the Horizon, it is high Tide, which thence begins to ebb, and by the Time it cometh to the Meridian of the Island, it is low Water. Then as the Moon descends from the Meridian, it begins to flow again in the same Order as it sets at *Goa*, and being set, it is here full Sea. The Author found this by Observations made at different Times.

THE Inhabitants of *Sokatora* are *Christians*, converted, as they say, by *St. Thomas*. They have Churches throughout the Island, in which there is no Oracle but the Cross, for which they have great Devotion, it being rare to find any Person without one about his Neck. The Author was informed, their Prayers were in the *Chaldean* Language. They use the *Christian* Names of *John*, *Peter*, *Andrew*, &c. and the Women, generally that of *Mary*.

* *Purchas* has omitted the Way hither.

b *Don John* supposes this to be the *Discozides* of *Ptolemy*, wherein was a City of the same Name, but says that Author errs as to the Figure and Situation of it, through the Misinformation of Mariners.

1540. *De Castro* THE Condition of this People is very singular, for they have no King, Ruler, Prelate, or any other Person to whom they are subject. But live in a Manner like wild Beasts, without any Order of Justice or Government. In all the Island, there is neither City nor Town, but most Part of the People dwell in Caves, and some little thatched Cottages, separated the one from the other. Their Food is Flesh and wild Dates. They drink Milk, and seldom any Water. This People is of the best Disposition in all these Parts. Their Bodies are tall and slend, their Faces well proportioned, their Colour is swarthy. The Women are somewhat whiter, and *honestly* fair. They use no Manner of Weapons offensive, or defensive, except certain Swords of *dead* Iron, very short. The Men go naked, only covering their *Pudenda* with a Piece of Kambolis, a sort of Cloth, whereof great Quantity is made in the Island.

THE Country is all over Mountains, and naturally poor, producing neither Wheat nor Rice, nor any Grain or Commodities, except *Sanguis Draconis*, and Verdigrease^b, which is in great Abundance, and esteemed above all. This Defect, *Don John* believes, is not to be imputed to the Soil, but to Want of Industry and Art in the Inhabitants. For that the Island inwards is very fresh, and hath many Valleys and Plains, very fit for Culture. However, there is Plenty of all Sorts of Cattle found in other Parts. These People have no Manner of Navigation, nor Industry to catch the Fish, which are infinite upon their Coasts. The Country produces very few Fruit Trees, of which the Palm is the chief, affording the principal Part of their Sustenance. But it yields all Sorts of eatable and medicinal Plants, the Mountains being covered with Basil, and other aromatic Herbs.

THE twenty-seventh of *January*, in the Morning, they came within Sight of *Aden*, about six Leagues to the North-West; and perceived, that the Land they saw the Day before, and seemed to be an Island, was the Mountain^c of *Aden*. This Mountain is very high and fair, and on every Side, craggy and rough, rising with some very high Points; resembling in all Respects the Hill of *Sintra*. Descending to the Sea, it thrusts out a very great and long Point, then presently withdrawing itself a good Space inward, two large Harbours are formed: And on that to the East,

a stands the strong City of *Aden*; which, within these three Years, fell under the Power of the *Turks*, by the Treachery of *Soleymân Basha*^d.

THE *Arabic* Gulf^e, commonly called the *Red-Sea*, begins in that Part of the Ocean bounded on the Side of *Africa* by Cape *Guardafu*, (of old *Aromata*) and on the other Side of *Asia*, by Cape *Fartak*, (formerly *Siagros*) in *Arabia*, and about forty Leagues distant, ends at *Suez*, the ancient City of the Heroes. From these Capes, the Shores run Westward as far as *Aden* and *Zeyla*, which belongs to *Abyssinia*, [or *Habash*] and from thence proceed narrowing with desert Coasts, and not much winding, till they meet in the Mouth of the *Arabic* Gulf, with two Promontories. That on the *Arabian* Side, was anciently called *Possadium*; but the Author was not acquainted with either the ancient or modern Name of that on the Side of [the] *Abyssinia*, or *Ethiopia*, and this is the narrowest Part of all the Gulf. This Entrance, is, by the neighbouring People, and Inhabitants of the Coast of *India*, called *Albabo*^h, which in *Arabic*, signifies the Gates, or Mouths, being about six Leagues wide, and is full of little Islands and Rocks, that one would imagine, the Passage was formerly stopped up. Those Isles are so full of Bays, Ports, and Nooks, and through the Channels entereth such a vast Quantity of Water, that one seemeth to sail in the most tempestuous Part of the Ocean.

THE Cape on the Side of *Arabia*, (which stretches into the Sea with a very great and long Point, without the Mouth of the Straights, where it forms a large Bay) appears to those coming from the Sea, to be an Island. At a considerable Distance from the firm Land, little more than a Stone's Cast from this Cape, is the Isle of the *Robons*, *Roboan*ⁱ, in the *Arabic*, signifying a Pilot. For here those dwell who bring in Ships, and carry them whither they are bound. This Island, which is about half a Mile in Compass, is round, and very flat, from hence one may ford it to Land at low Water. About one League off at Sea, lies another Island, about a League and a half in Length; which on the Side towards the Coast of the *Abyssinia*, hath a very large Haven, where a great Navy of Gallies may ride secure from all Winds. But there is neither Harbour nor landing Place on the Shore facing *Arabia*.

THIS Channel may be safely passed in the

^a Since then, the *Arabs* subdued them

hot says, *Aden* is the ancient *Madoca*; and the Mountain, that called *Cabubarra*, famous among Navigators of old

^d Here, our Author relates the Story, already told, p. 92. only he says, the King was hanged before the Gates of the City

^e It is thus called by the *Arabs*, who also give it the Name of *The Gulf of Madoca*, and *Hqâz*; which last is, or was, a Province of *Arabia*

^f The *Arabs* call it *Jebal al Mandab*, or *Mandab*, from whence the Straights have their Name.

^g The *Nubian* Geography says, that Ships cannot pass without being seen from Shore.

^h *Al Bâb*, signifies the Gate, not the Gates, which in *Arabic*, is *al Abwâb*. This Strait is also called *Bâb al Mandab*, as hath been observed before, p. 91. Note. The *Turks* name it as they do all Straights in general) *Bâb Bogâza*. Our Sailors call it, *The Bubs*.

ⁱ Rather *Robân*, or *Rabân*.

1540. Midst, steering North-West by West, or South-East by East, there being eleven Fathom deep quite through, and it may be passed near the Island or firm Land, as well as in the Midst, being every where free from Flats, Shoals, or any other Obstructions. The Ground is a soft Stone, which they call Coral, so that one shall scarce ever meet with a sandy Bottom. Being far within the Channel, and going to seek a Place of Shelter from the Eastern Winds, which here are very strong, the Depth diminisheth somewhat, but is never less than nine Fathom.

Channel of
Abeshin

BESIDES this Channel of *Arabia*, there are many others, by which the Streights may be safely entered. But, the Author says, Mention is made of one only, called the Channel of *Abeshin*. Between the Island of the *Gates*, and the Promontory on the Coasts of *Abeshin*, (which may be about five Leagues) there lie six Islands; which being very great and high, the Sight of them strikes the Sailors with Terror on their first Approach, and makes them doubt there is no Passage that Way. But the Truth is, that between them there are very large and deep Channels, which may be sailed through, without any Danger; or, leaving them all on the Right-hand, you may pass between them and the Coast of *Abeshin*.

Lat. 14
Long. 51

THE twenty-ninth, at Noon, *Don John* found the Latitude of the Mouth of the Strait, and Point of *Arabia*, to be twelve Degrees fifteen Minutes. In Regard the Pilot found the same Altitude at Land, it cannot, he says, but be very exact.

Two Hours
after

Two Hours after Midnight, they set Sail, from the Mouth of the Strait. In the Morning, they saw both Coasts, being nearer the *Abeshin*, between which and the first Island, they sailed North-West by West, the Wind blowing hard at East till Noon. This Coast was quite new and unknown before to the *Portuguese*. Their Distance from Land was about four Leagues. An Hour after Sun-rise, they saw a Range of Islands, most of them very low; which extended North-West, and South-East, as the Coast did, along which they lay, for about sixty Leagues. In this Channel of *Abeshin*, they sailed with a fair Wind, having Islands all the Way on both Sides.

Distance
for passing

THERE is no sailing by Night, or without the Wind in the Poop, for if it happen to change, they cannot tack about, nor come to Anchor in any Place. Till they are gotten as far as the first of the first Islands, they shall see to the Seaward, nine little ones, and thence, forward, the Sea remains free and open. But towards the Shore they are very numerous, some few of them two Leagues distant from it. The Length of the Channel,

a made by the three first Islands, and the Land, may be about eight Leagues. The safest Way, is to keep nearer the Coast than the Isles: But the Author is of Opinion, that none should venture through, without a Pilot of the Country.

SECT II.

Islands Sarbo, Shamo, Dillaka, and Massua, described Account of Habash, or Abeshin. Of the Nile, and Cause of its Increase Years of Habash, and Conquests of the King of Zevla. The Abeshins, their Manners. Design of turning the Course of the Nile.

THE thirty-first, by Day, they came to a Shoal in six Fathom Water, having to the Right, certain Islands, called *The Seven Sisters*, between which and the Shoal, there is a very dangerous Rock, as the *Moorish* Pilots told the Author. So that the safe Navigation, is to keep near the Land. At Night they came to Anchor in a Haven, called *Sarbo*, in an Island of the same Name, in nine Fathom and a half. All this Day, very close to the Coast, they saw abundance of little Islands.

THE first of February, *Don John* going on Land in the Port of *Sarbo*, with the Pilot and Master, found the Latitude fifteen Degrees seven Minutes. This Island is about a League and a half in Breadth. It belongs to a great Archipelago of Islands, about four Leagues from the *Abeshin* Coast, and twenty-four short of *Massua*. *Sarbo* lies most to Seaward of those Islands, some of which are almost even with the Surface of the Water, and others rise so high, that they seem to touch the Clouds. There are among them so many Bays, Ports, and Harbours, that no Wind can annoy them. They all want Water, except one that is very high, which the *Portuguese* call *Whale Island*, from its Figure. There is also Plenty of Cattle, and a large Harbour, where Ships may winter. The Island of *Sarbo* is very low; so are the Trees, which are very numerous, but barren. The Plain was full of Grass, and Flocks of Men and Cattle appeared in every Place. But only one Camel was seen, for which Reason they called it, *The Island of the Camel*. In searching all over the Island they found no Water, except one Well digged in a Stone, made, it should seem, to receive the Rain.

THE fourth, at Sun-rise, they left *Sarbo*, and the seventh sailed along many Islands, which are about three or four Leagues from Shore. Most of them are very low, and even with the Sea. In their Passage, they kept about a League to the

* The Sun's Meridian Altitude, was sixty-two Degrees forty-five Minutes; the Declination for the Day, fifteen Degrees. Whence the Latitude results as set down. † This sometimes spelled, *Sarbo*. ‡ Sun's Altitude above the Horizon, near sixty-one Degrees Declination, thirteen Degrees fifty Minutes

1541
De Castro

Right of them: And about Even, saw also to the Right, about four Leagues distant, a very long Range of Islands, extending about five Leagues in Length, North-West, and South-East, as near as could be judged. And this is the Breadth of the Channel they sailed in all this Day, reckoning from one Island to the other. The Coast stretched North-West by West, and South-East by East, and the Depth continually twenty-five Fathom, in an oozy Bottom.

City of
Dallaka

THE eighth, they set Sail two Hours after Sun-rise; and holding their Course, for the most Part, North-West, at Sun-set, found themselves near the Entrance of the Channel, that passes between the Point of *Dallaka*, and *Shumoa*, a League distant, which is the first of five very flat Isles, that lie between the said Point and Land. It is two Leagues in Compass, and has some Springs and Wells. Although they were in the principal Channel, yet Night coming on, and many of the Gallions being far behind, as it would also be difficult to hit the Channel, and the Wind was already low, they therefore took in all but their Foreails; and standing to the South-East, two Hours within Night, came to an Anchor in forty Fathom Water, the Ground oozy. All this Day, they saw Islands along the Coast, so flat, that they seemed on a Level with the Sea. The Coast stretched North-West, and South-East, to a low Point, as far forward as the Island of *Dallaka*, beyond which Point, there is a great Bay, entering ten or twelve Leagues into the Land.

Island
Dallaka.

THE Island of *Dallaka*, [rather *Dalbaka*] is very low, and almost even with the Sea, without any Rising in it. It is reckoned twenty-five Leagues in Length, and twelve in Breadth. The South Coast of it, as far as can be discerned, stretches East South-East, and West North-West; and along the Shore lies a great Number of little Islands, all very low. The Author only coasted this Side of the Island for seven Leagues, at the Distance of two from Land; and often casting the Lead, could never find Ground.

THE Soil of this Island is red. It produceth few Trees, but abounds with Herbs. The Inhabitants are *Moors*; and the King resides most Part of the Year at *Masua*. It yieldeth little:

For since *Swäken* lost in Reputation, *Masua*, 1541 *Aden*, and *Judda*, have lost their Trade, and therewith their Fame.

THE Capital City is situated almost at the Point of the Island, which lies on the West Side, fronting *Abessin*, for or seven Leagues distant. It is called *Dallaka* (whence the Island took its Name) which in *Arabic* signifies *ten Leagues*, because formerly, the Custom-House there, yielded so much yearly to the King.

THE twelfth, the Gallions came into the Port of *Masua*.

MASUA, [or *Massua*] is a small Island less than half a Mile in Length; and in Breadth, a Caliber Shot. It is very flat, and lies in a great and crooked Nook of the Coast, very near the Point thereof, that is on the North-West Side; the Channel between it and Land, being about a Falcon Shot over, and in some Parts not so much. In this Channel lies the Harbour, which is secure in all Weathers. The Current is very small, and all Winds come from the Land. The Depth of the Water is eight or nine Fathom, and the Ground oozy. The Entrance of this Port is on the North-East Side, toward the Middle of the Channel. For from the East-North-East Point of the Island, there runs a Shoal towards another, which proceeds from the Point of the Nook; so that Ships must take Care to keep the Middle of the Channel, which is very strait, and runs North-East, and South-West.

VERY near this Island, to the South and South-West, lie two other Islands. The bigger, that next Land, the other, lying towards the South-West, is very round. These three Islands, which are all very flat and barren, form a Triangle. There is no Spring in any of them, only in *Masua*, are many Cisterns of Water. Between, are scattered many Shoals; but through the Midst of them runs a Channel, where Gallies, and rowing Vessels, may pass at full Sea.

MASUA, with all the Coast from Cape *Guadafu* to *Swäken*, was formerly subject to *Prefter John*: But within these few Years, it was seized by the King of *Dallaka*; who resides mostly here, (as hath been observed) on Account of the Trade driven with the *Abissins*, from whom he hath abundance of Gold and Ivory. The Air is

^a In the Copy, these Names are written *Dalaqua*, and *Xamoa*, the Portuguese expressing our *k* by *qu*, and *sh* by *x*. ^b Every *Arabian Lek*, is worth ten thousand *Sherafins*, each of which amounts to two *Tangas Larinas*: So that ten *Leks* are worth forty thousand *Cruzados*.

^c Here stood formerly, according to *Don John's* Opinion, the City of *Ptolemaida* of the wild Beasts. Thus he conjectures, from the abundance of wild Beasts in the Country, and the Latitude of the Place. But there are no Proofs. For first, all this Coast is full of wild Beasts; and as to the Latitude, the Agreement is rather a Proof that it is not the same Place. For since *Ptolemy* hath determined the Situation, solely by the computed Distances, it is almost impossible it should fall exactly conformable to the Truth.

^d By *Prefter*, or *Presbyter*, *John*, is meant the Emperor of the *Abissins*; whom the Portuguese for a long Time mistook for an imaginary Prince, with that ridiculous Name or Title, placed by *Marco Polo*, and others, in *Tartary*, to the North of *C hina*.

1541. exceeding hot and unhealthful in May and June, a
De Castro. for want of Wind So that both the King and
Arkoko Inhabitants retire to *Dallaka* during these two
Part. Months. The Land, as far as *Arkoko*^a, where
there are many Wells, a League to the South
of *Mafua*, is very high and full of Mountains :
Between which and the Sea are spacious Fields
and Plains ; but thence toward the Coast is more
open and clear. The Country abounds with E-
lephants, Tigers, Wolves, wild Boars, Stags,
Elks, and other Sorts of Beasts, unknown to the
Portuguese.

Present of Habash. THE *Prester John*, called also King of the
Abeishi, is Lord of all *Ethiopia*, below *Egypt*, ex-
tending from Cape *Guardafui*, the most Eastern
Point of *Africa*, as far as *Swaken*, in the Red-
Sea ; having the Country of the *Nubians* to the
North.

Head and Court of Nile. *NILUS* is still called *Nil*, by the *Abeishi*, *E-*
gyptians, *Arabs*, and *Indians*. Its Springs are in
the Southern Borders, towards the Country of
the *Kafirs* ; as the Author was informed by some
Abeishi Lords, and other considerable Persons :
Who also assured him, that the River does not
hide itself any where under-ground, as the An-
cients relate, but continually shewed itself car-
rying a great Breadth and Depth

Cause of its Inundations. HE likewise learned from them, that the
Increase and Overflowing of the *Nile* was owing
to the great and continual Rains, which fall in
June and *July*, in their Country, which also
was overflowed ; and that in *August* the Rain
ceased, and the Water fell by degrees. As Con-
firmation of this, he observes, that at *Mafua*,
in *June* and Part of *July*, there fell great Storms,
Rains, and Thunder, and that he could perceive
within Land continual Tempests, and the Sky
black and cloudy : Which yet the *Abeishins* said gave
but a faint Idea of what it really was. He adds,
that the same Months of *June* and *July* are the
Winter at Cape *Buena Esperanza*, and all along
that Coast, where the Rains fall without Inter-
mission.

Mence 72. Upon Enquiry they farther acquainted him,
Catholics. that the River made several Islands ; and, among
the rest, one very large, with a great City on
it, which he concludes must be the antient *Me-*
ror ; that it abounded with certain dangerous A-
nimals, which he supposes to be Crocodiles ; and
that in a certain Place which they named, it fell
from a large Rock, with great Noise ; but not
so as to make People deaf.

Habash in- needed. *ATINE TINGIL*, (called afterwards *Da-*
vid) reigning in 1530, became so cruel and ty-
rannical, that he grew hateful to the *Abeishins*.

At this Time *Gradamet*, King of *Zeyla*, encou- 1541.
raged by the Disaffection of his Subjects, or in- De Castro
vited by some of the Lords, invaded his Domi-
nions, and took some Towns, by the Plunder
of which he animated his Troops, the chief
Strength whereof consisted in 300 *Turks*, arm-
ed with *Arquebusses*. On the other Hand he
made all the Inhabitants free in the Cities he
passed through, and eased them of Taxes By
which means he gained, not only the People in
general, but the Nobles themselves over to his
Interest.

THE *Prester John* sent an Army against him ; *The Emperor*
but, on the *Turks* firing their Calavers, which *defeated*
killed some, the Soldiers were so terrified, that
they presently fled. The King of *Zeyla*, puffed
up with this Victory, and joined by Multitudes
of *Abeishins*, ravaged the Country ; and marched
towards that Part adjoining *Magadoxa* and *Me-*
linda, in order to attack a Mountain, where the
royal Treasure was lodged. To prevent this *A-*
tine Tingil met him, with all the Forces he could
muster. But this Army was put to Flight like
the former, by means of the *Turks* and the *A-*
arquebusses. The *Presbyter* after this Defeat, re-
treating to the Mountains, died within a few *Days*
Days, in 1539. The King of *Zeyla*, after his *Grave*
Victory, continued his March to the Mountain,
by great Journeys ; and, arriving there, assault-
ed it with such Vigour, that although it was in-
accessible, yet, at length, he took it, and there-
in the greatest Treasure that ever was known in
the World.

THE loyal *Abeishins*, on the *Presbyter's* De- *Dissest*
cease, elected his eldest Son in his Room : Who *that orj-ed*
being very young, and the Country in Con-
fusion, a Brother of his dealt with some great
Men [or they prompted him] to obtain the King-
dom, which proved the utter Ruin of the *Abe-*
ishins. While the unfortunate Youth was thus
engaged in a civil War, the King of *Zeyla* came
upon him ; and he being unable to resist fled to
the Mountain of the *Jews*. This Mountain is *Mountain of*
very great and high, and of difficult Ascent ; *Jews*
having but one Way up to the Top, which is a
large Plain, abounding with Springs, Fruit-Trees,
Cattle, and cultivated Lands. The Inhabitants
observe the Law of *Moses* : But how they came
here (there being no *Jews* any where else in the
Land) or why they never come down and con-
verse with the *Abeishins*, Don *John* says he could
never discover. However that be, these *Jews*
defended the King against the *Moors*, and King
of *Zeyla*, who also entering the Mountain, were
obliged to retire.

^a Or *Aruko* and *Erkoko*. 'Tis written faultily by some, *Erocco* ; by *Deliste*, *Arcua* ; and, in *Purchas*, (pro-
bably by Mistake) *Aquito*.

1541. ABOUT this Time the *Portuguese* arrived at a go to visit *Jerusalem* and Mount *Sinay*. This 1541. De Castro. *Mafua*, which dismayed the *Moors*, and encouraged the King to quit the Mountain of the *Jews*, and advance with his People to certain Hills near the Coast about *Mafua*, from whence he sent most doleful Letters to the *Portuguese* Governor, who returned Answers with Hopes of Succours, and, after his Return from *Suez*, 500 Men were sent under a Commander, to the *Presbyter*.

Portuguese
Aid.

People of
Habash.

THE *Abeshins* are naturally ceremonious, and full of Punctilios of Honour. They use no Weapons but Darts, marked with a Lance and Cross; only a few wear half Swords. They are very active on Horseback. They are generally addicted to Lying and Rapine. They don't reckon those rich, who possess Money, but only such as have Abundance of Cattle, and Camels, notwithstanding which they prize Gold very much. At Home they are weak and Cowards; but in other Countries strong and valiant. So that it is become a Proverb through *India*, that the good Soldier must be an *Abeshin*, and they are so highly esteemed in *Ballagat*, *Kambaya*, *Bengala*, and other Places, that they are always the principal Persons in the Army.

Habit and
Diet.

THEIR Habit is very mean, consisting of a Linen Shirt; only some great Persons wear a *Beden*. The common People go naked. They eat *Bolliemus*, and Flesh, either quite raw, or with the Blood in it, only just shewing it to the Fire. In the Land there is no Cities nor Towns, but they live in the Fields, under Tents, like the *Arabes*.

Queen's
Shiba.

THEY value themselves much on account of the Queen of *Saba*, saying, that she took Shipping in the Port of *Mafua*, or, according to others, at *Swäken*; that she carried great Riches and Jewels with her; and that going to *Jerusalem*, to see King *Solomon*, she made him large Presents, and returned with Child by him to her Kingdom.

Of turning
the Nile.

It is a Thing much talked of among the *Abeshins*, that a Soldan of *Babylon*, many Years ago having made War against *Presbyter John*, this Monarch gathered a great Multitude of People, with an Intent to turn the River *Nile*, by another Channel, into the Sea. Which when the Soldan heard of, he was amazed, and being sensible, that if the Work was executed, it would ruin *Egypt*, he sent Ambassadors, with great Gifts, to obtain Peace and Friendship with the *Presbyter*, and gave the *Abeshins* a Privilege to pass through his Country, without paying Tribute. And at this Day they pay none, when they

made Enquiry in the *Arabic* Gulph.

SECT. III.

White Spots in the Sea. Marate Island. Port of Shabak. Shoals and Channel of Swäken. The Sea appears red, green, and white. Observation of the Tide. City of Swäken; its Port, Strength, Trade, Road, Channel and Tides.

THE nineteenth, at Sun-rising, they left the Nook, half a League beyond *Mafua*, and set sail, keeping about half a League from Land. This Day the Weather was very close, and it rained. The Fleet consisted of sixty-four rowing Vessels, viz. three Galliots, eight small Gallies, and thirty-five Foists. At Night the Wind being North-West, it calmed, and blew a little at West. In the second Watch it began to rain. Some Time after they weighed Anchor, and rowed along the Shore till Morning, it raining still very hard.

THE twentieth at Evening they were as far as the Point of the Range of Islands on the North-side, about fourteen Leagues from *Mafua*, and four from the Coast; which, in that Distance, lies North-North-West. In *Harate*, *Dohul*, and *Damanil*, some of the outermost Islands, they found Cattle and Water, with a few poor Dwellings. The Land of them is low, and they are surrounded with Shoals and Flats.

ALL the first Watch of the Night, they sailed North-North-West, with a fair Wind at East. At the Beginning of the second, they fell on a sudden among certain very whitish Spots, which cast Flames like Lightning. Wondering at this strange Appearance, they took in their Sails, believing they were upon some Shoals or Banks; but, on sounding, found twenty-six Fathom Water. Wherefore perceiving the Pilots of the Country were not surprised at it, they continued their Course.

THE twenty-first, when it was Day, they saw off at Sea a low Island, whereot the *Moorish* Pilots were afraid.

THE twenty-second, at Day-break, they set sail, and arriving by Noon at a very long Point of Sand, which comes from Shore, Don *John's* Pilot observed the Latitude to be eighteen Degrees, thirty Minutes. After doubling this Point they found the Sea very open, and sailed North-West by West. An Hour after they came to an Harbour called *Marate*. The Coast this Day stretched North-North-West, and is all low

* A Kind of upper Garment.

b Or *Arabs*.

c Meaning *Kabera*, or *Kayra*, in *Egypt*.

d This, according to *Bermudas*, was *Ale Beale*, Predecessor to *Onadinguel*, (here called *Atine ungil*) who actually began the Work. See *Purchas's Pilgrim*, Vol. 2. p. 1170.

1541. Land; but farther inwards, the Mountains seem a De Castro. to reach the Clouds.

Marate
described.

MARATE is a very low desert Island, of a roundish Shape, about three Leagues from Land, sixty-six beyond *Mafua*, and, in Compass, a League and an half. On the South-West Side, facing the Coast, there is a very good Haven, secure from all Winds, especially the Eastern, made by two long Points, which extend North by West, and South by East, enclosing a spacious Harbour, narrow at the Mouth; where there lies a long very flat Island, with some Sand-Banks and Shoals; so that no Sea can get in. This Port hath two Entries, both very near the Points. The Channel, on the East Side, lies North by West. The Depth is three Fathom in the shallowest Place, and encreases advancing in the Port, where, near the Shore, there are four and five Fathom; the Bottom is muddy. They rode here all Night.

Two Islands. THE twenty-third, departing at Sun-rise, they found seven Fathom, and sandy Ground. At eleven, they came in Sight of two little Islands, far off at Sea; one called *Daratata*, the other *Dalkofallar*, from which to *Swaken*, is a Day's Sail. From Noon they sailed North-West by West, till Evening, when they entered the Channel of *Swaken*, steering North-West, for the Space of a League; when, meeting with Shoals, they, to avoid them, sailed West by North, and sometimes West. They held this Course about three Leagues, and then seeing a great Island a-head of them, tacked toward Land; and, before Sun-set, came to Anchor among rocky Shoals, in a good Harbour, called *Shabak*, which signifies, in *Arabic*, a Net. This Day the Pilot found the Latitude, by the Meridian Altitude, to be scarce nineteen Degrees.

Port Shabak.

Shoals of Swaken.

THE Shoals of *Swaken* are so many, and oddly intermixed with Islands, Banks, Rocks, and Channels, that there is no describing them. At the Entrance among them, to the Right, there is a Shoal under Water, on which the Sea breaketh much; and to the Left a little Island, that stretcheth with the Shoal, North-East by East, and South-West by South. The Distance is about three Quarters of a League.

The Channel. BEING entered, the Channel appeareth very spacious; and, the farther you advance, the more numerous the Islands appear to the Right, or Seaward. They are very low, and with the Flats and Banks of Sand or Rocks, are without Number: But those towards Land are not so many; though, in Comparison of any other Sea, it is the foulest, and most unnavigable. The Rule for sailing through these Shoals, is to keep

as near those to the Right as may be. The Breadth of the Channel, in some Places, is about half a League; in others, a quarter; and, in others, less than a Caliver Shot. From the Entrance to the Port of *Shabak*, which is about five Leagues, they never found less than six Fathom Water, or more than twelve. The Extent of these Shoals may be eight or nine Leagues, and then you pass into another Channel, safer for Ships and great Vessels. Or you may leave all these Shoals to the Right, sailing close to the Shore; and this is by much the best and most pleasant Way.

1541. De Castro.

THE twenty-fourth, at Sun-rise, they left *Shabak*, and rowed along so narrow a Channel, that two could not go a-breast; the widest Part being not above a Cross-bow shot, over. They never went nearer Land than the same Distance, nor more than Cannon-shot from it. All the Shoals, Rocks, and Banks, which surrounded them, were under Water, yet easily discovered by the Colour of the Sea, which over them appeared either very red or very green, but dark or blackish, where the Channel was deep and open.

The Sea of various Colours.

HALF an Hour past eleven, they cast Anchor to Leeward of a little, low, round Island, four Leagues from *Shabak*, in nineteen Degrees. In this Latitude *Ptolemy* placeth the Mountain of *Satyrs*, which the Pilots of the Country knew nothing of: But Don *John* walking about two Miles from the Coast, found various Kinds of Beasts, and vast Flocks of Planets, whose Foot-steps covered all the Plain to the Sea-side. And this he supposeth gave Occasion to the Fable of the Satyrs inhabiting those Hills*. From *Shabak* hither, the Depth is never less than two Fathoms and a half, or more than eleven. The Tides here rise not above half a Yard, and it begins to flow as soon as the Sun ascends the Horizon, after the Manner of the Tide at *Sakatoria*.

Of the various Colours of the Sea.

THE twenty-sixth, at Sun-rise, they left the Island, rowing along a Shoal of Rocks to the Left, that ran almost parallel to the Coast; the Space between being full of Shoals and Banks; but to the Right of them the Sea appeared quite open and free. At nine they cast Anchor at a little Island, encompassed with many Flats and Shoals, where was a good Haven, a League and half distant from the former, and short of *Swaken* five Leagues.

More Shoal.

THE twenty-seventh, they departed before Sun-set, and, two Hours within Night, came to an Anchor a League and a half beyond, in twenty-eight Fathom Water.

THE twenty-eighth, at Day-break, they hoist

The Sea green and red.

* This is not unlikely; but it does not prove the Mountain of *Satyrs* to be here, for the Reasons given in Note c p. 112.

1541. and sail; and at nine of the Clock came to an ^a *De Castro*. Anchor about two Leagues from the Land, in twenty-three Fathom Water, on a soft Sand, like Ouze. In the Way, they perceived some Shoals out at Sea, by the Water appearing very green or red. Two Hours after Noon, they set sail again, and at Night cast Anchor in thirty-seven Fathom Water, the Bottom Sand, hard by an Island, a League and half short of *Swâken*. The Coast bears North North-West, and South South-East; along it runs a Shoal that entreth into the Sea, near half a League. The Land upon the Sea-side is like the former.

THE first of *March*, setting forward, they doubled a Point made by the Shoal; and entering by the Channel inward, came to Anchor in the Port of *Swâken*.

City of Swâken. *SWÂKEN*^a, at present, is one of the richest Cities in the East, standing on the Coast of the *Abesbi*. It equals, if not exceeds, the most eminent Places in Goodness and Security of the Port; Facility in lading and unlading Ships, Traffic with remote Countries^b; Strength, and advantageous Situation of the Town.

Fine Harbour. THE Harbour is sheltered by Nature from all Winds, and the Water so smooth and still, that the Tides are scarce perceptible. It is able to contain 200 Ships, and Gallies without Number¹. The Road hath in all Places five or six Fathom, and in some seven. The Bottom is Mud and may be seen, except where it is ten or twelve Fathom deep. The Ships come up close to the Shore, quite round the City, and may be laden by laying a Plank from them to the Merchants Warehouses; to the Doors of which the Gallies are fastened, with their Beaks stretching over the Streets, which serve as Bridges.

Its great Trade. As for Commerce, the Author knew no City that could compare with it but *Lisbon*: For it traded to both Peninsulas of the *Indies*, particularly *Kambaya*, *Tanasarin*, *Pegu*, and *Malaka*,^c within the *Arabic* Gulph, to *Juda*, [or *Juddah*] *Kairo*, and *Alexandria*; besides what it carried on with *Ethiopia*, and the Land of the *Abesbi*, from whence it had vast Quantities of Gold and Ivory.

Its Strength and Situation. FOR Strength, the City seems naturally well secured, by the many Shoals, Islands, Rocks, Sand-banks, and intricate Channels, that lie for sixteen Leagues about it; which makes the Approach by Sea very dangerous and terrible to Navigators: Yet the Inhabitants have not taken the less Care to defend it by Art. The Situation of this City is in this Manner. In the midst of a circular Nook stands a flat Island, almost per-

fectly round, and level with the Water, about a Mile in Compass. In this Space there is not a Foot of Ground, but what is taken up with Houses; so that all the Island is a City, and all the City an Island. This is *Swâken*.

ON the East South-East, and South-West, its Distance from Land is not over a Bow-shot.^{*The Road for Ships.*} The Road lies round about the City, to the Distance of a great Cross-bow-shot; having everywhere six or seven Fathom Water: So that Ships may cast Anchor at Pleasure, in a mud Bottom. This Road is encompassed with a great Shoal, and that by others, which renders it almost inaccessible by Sea.

IN the Nook, on the North-West Side, lie other three Islands: Two of them which stand farthest in, are but small; but the third next the Channel, is about as large as the City. Between this Island and the Coast, on the North Side of the Nook, runs a great and long Channel; where a numerous Fleet may ride in seven Fathom Water, out of all Danger of being hurt or seen from the City, except their Masts. At Sun-rise it is full Sea, and gradually ebbs, till that Star comes to the Meridian, when it is dead low Water: After that the Tide begins to rise, and at Sun-set is full in. At this Time the Water does not rise in the City, above one Quarter of a Yard; and along the Coast, the most that it riseth, is a Yard and half, and, in some high Places, less than three Quarters. But when the Author made this Observation, they were neap Tides.

S E C T. IV.

A Whirlwind. Sea full of Shoals and Rocks. The Tide. Ports *Dradate*, *Doroo*, *Fûshâa*, *Arekea*, *Salaka*, *Farate*, *Kilfit*, *Ras al Dwaer*, *Ras al Jidid*. *Thunder and Hail. Numerous Shoals.*

THE nineteenth of *March*, before Sun-set, they left *Swâken*, and anchored at the Mouth of the Channel. The tenth, they departed: They lay all Night at Anchor, when a surprising Quantity of Dew fell.

THE eleventh they had a Storm from the North, which carried up the Sand of the Shore to a great Height, and then scattering it through the Air, made it appear like a great Mist or Smoke.

THE twelfth, they passed out of the Channel, two Leagues beyond *Swâken*, being about a League and a half from the Coast; but met with so many Rocks, Shoals, and Flats, whereon the Sea broke violently, that they were forced to take in their Sails, and row for three Hours, till they got clear of them. In the Evening they came

^a The Portuguese write *Suaquen*, to which *Swâken* answers in English Characters. The Author supposes it to be the Port *Aspi* of *Ptolemy*. ^b Since the Turkish Conquests *Mokka* and other Places have greater Trade.

1541. to Anchor within the Bank, entering a very narrow Channel, one League beyond the former, and three from *Swåken*. It is a great and spacious within; the Ground very clear, nor can the Sea enter and do any Hurt.

Rocks and Banks,

THE thirteenth, an Hour before Day, they passed out of the Channel, and saw to the Right, about a Cannon-shot distant, a very long Range of Shoals, which seemed to bear the same Course with the Coast. At eleven the Wind scanted, and, blowing from the North North-West, that they could not make any Way, they were forced to fasten their Vessels to the Rocks: But, about two in the Afternoon, the Wind springing brisker at North North-East, they bore North-West; and, coming up with the Bank of the Land, took in their Sails, and rowed into a very narrow and winding Channel, harbouring within the Bank. It is about seven Leagues beyond *Swåken*, from whence the Coast bears North and South, and North by West, and South by East.

The Tides.

THE fifteenth, Don John went ashore, and observed, that when the Sun was two Hours above the Horizon, it was full Sea, and at two, after Noon, low Water. The Quantity which the Tide rose was twenty-two Cubits.

THE sixteenth, they left the Channel, the Wind at North, and, half a League beyond, cast Anchor. The seventeenth, they put into a very good Harbour, called *Dradate*, ten Leagues from *Swåken*; the Coast between lying North by West, and South by East: The Land near the Shore is all very low; but, three Leagues within, there are very great and high Mountains.

Dradate fine Port.

TRADATE justly merits to be ranked among the most eminent Ports; it lies in the Altitude of nineteen Degrees, fifty Minutes. The Entry hath, in Breadth, about a small Falcon Shot, but within, runs gradually narrowing, yet the Depth of Water all the Way is twenty Fathom, the Ground Ouze. About a quarter of a League inwards there are several Wells, affording the best and greatest Quantity of Water known in all these Coasts.

Excellent Watering.

THE nineteenth, they sailed about three Leagues and a half in Sight of many Shoals; the Coast stretched North and South. The twentieth, at Sun-rising, the Sea being ruffled with a North Wind, they were forced to seek Harbour within the Shoal, entering by a very narrow and troublesome Channel: After they had cast Anchor, the Wind came North North-East. The twenty-first, they departed with a fair West North-West Wind, and sailed North, within half a League of the Shore. An Hour after

1541. Sun-rising they came up with a very long and fair Point; behind which, is the Bay of *Doroo* De Castro.

DOROO, is a very fair and great Bay, fifteen Leagues and a half beyond *Swåken*. On the South Side, it thrusteth a very large and bare Point into the Sea, where there is built a great and round Tower, resembling a Pillar. The Bay is full of Islands, Creeks and Nooks, where many Vessels may take Shelter unperceived: The Mouth is closed up all round, with a dry Shoal lying about a Mile off at Sea; only, opposite to the Cape, it leaves a narrow Entry, in which is found six Fathom Water; and, advancing gradually, the Depth diminishes till you come into three Fathoms, which is the shallowest: The Ground is a very hard Clay, and the Course into it East by North. A Cannon Shot from this Bay is a Well with Plenty of Water, but very brackish.

THE twenty-second, at Day-break, they departed with their Oars, and passing safely through the Rocks, with which the Sea was full, towards ten o'Clock made their Ships fast to some of them; and, about Evening, doubling a low Point of Land, came into a very spacious Bay, called *Fushaa*, three Leagues and a half beyond *Doroo*. The Coast between lies North and South, inclining a little to the West and East.

Bay of Fushaa,

FUSHAA Bay is remarkable for a high and sharp Pike; the Latitude is twenty Degrees fifteen Minutes; the Mouth is made by two very low Points, lying North by East, and South by West, a League and a half asunder. As no great Sea enters, there is a good Harbour, with an ouzy Bottom. At the Mouth there are ten and twelve Fathom Water; the Depth inward diminishing till it comes to five Fathom. There is no Water here, and the Land is very dry and barren. Along the South Coast of the Bay there lie nine little Islands in a Row, and others scattered elsewhere; all small, low, and compassed with Shoals.

THE twenty-fifth, coasting the Land in Sight of many Rocks on the Right, at ten o'Clock they entered a very capacious Harbour, called *Arekea*, four Leagues from *Fushaa*, the Coast running North and South, a little inclining to the West and East.

AREKEA is the strongest and most defenceable Haven that the Author had seen, twenty-two Leagues beyond *Swåken*. In the Midst of the Entry lies an Island, about a Cross-bow-shot in Length, and near the same in Breadth. On the South Side there runs out a Shoal and Bank from the Land, which hinders a Passage that Way. The Channel on the North Side is a Cross-bow-shot over, and fifteen Fathom deep,

* The Anchor says, this is the Point which *Ptolemy* calls the Promontory of *Diogenes*.
 • Don John supposes it to be the *Dioskuron* of *Ptolemy*.

• In *Purchas Fumae*.

1541. running North-West and South-East, the Length a
De Castro. of a Caliver Shot. It must be sailed in the
Middle, for the Sides are shallow, and full of
Rocks. Being passed through this Channel, the
Coast winds on both Sides, and widens, forming
a large and safe Port, one League in Length,
and half in Breadth. 'Tis deep in the Middle,
but near the Land is full of Shoals: There is no
Water in this Place. When the Pike bears
West South-West, you are then up with the
Port. From hence *De Gama* sent all the Fleet
back to *Mafua*, except fifteen small Gallies,
with which he continued his Voyage.

Salaka Port. THE thirtieth, they left *Arekea* at Noon, and
came to Anchor, four Leagues farther, in the
Port of *Salaka*, twenty-six Leagues beyond *Swäken*;
the Coast bearing North and South, inclin-
ing somewhat to the West and East. It is ob-
servable that, to *Arekea*, the Land along the
Coast is very low and flat as far as the Mountains
within Land; but thenceforward, the Space be-
tween the Mountains and Shore is full of Hil-
locks and Eminences.

THE thirty-first, they departed, and sailing
about seventeen Leagues, an Hour before Sun-set,
fastened themselves to a Shoal, which is a League
from the Shore, and forty-three beyond *Swäken*.

Ras al Dwaer. FROM *Salaka*, the Coast begins to wind very
much, and, for a League beyond *Ras al Dwaer*,
runs very low to the North North-East, and at
length makes a Point of Land; where there are
thirteen little Heaps or Elevations of Stone,
which the *Moorish* Pilots said were Graves.
And from this Point of the *Calmes**, about two
Leagues, the Coast runneth North North-West;
and thence, as far as the Shoal where they an-
chored. It is the most noted Point through all
this Coast, because all that sail from *Mafua*,
Swäken, and other Places, to *Juda* [or *Juddah*]
Alkofsir and *Tor*, must of Necessity fetch it up.
The Sea, for these seventeen Leagues, is so full
of Rocks and Shoals, that it seemed to the Au-
thor fitter for wading through, than passing even
in Boats: Infomuch, that no Directions can be
given for Sailing hereabouts; but all must be left
entirely to Chance, and the Care of a skilful Pilot.

*Dangerous
Sailing.*

BETWEEN *Salaka* and *Ras al Dwaer* there
are three Islands, forming a Triangle; nearer the
latter Place of the two. The biggest of them,
named *Magarxawn*, is about two Leagues in
Length. It is very high Land, and without
Water; lying three Leagues to the South of *Ras
al Dwaer*. The second Island, called *Almante*,

which lies much out at Sea, is likewise high, and
without Water; but the third is very low, and
all of Sand, four Leagues from *Salaka*.

THE second of April, an Hour before Day, they
loosed from the Shoal, and, having rowed
along the Coast four Leagues came to *Farate*,
a very large and fair River. On each Side of the
Channel, (which runs from West to East, in
twenty-one Degrees forty Minutes Latitude) is a
low Point of Land, distant from each other a
Caliver Shot; and from each Point runs a Shoal,
and between the two is the Entrance into the
River. The Water there has thirty Fathom
Depth, and thence diminishes to eighteen. The
Land on each Side is very low, and without
either Bush or Tree to be seen. Sailing a League
farther, they came to *Kilfit*.

KILFIT is a fair Harbour, secure from all
Winds, with twelve Fathom Water every where.
There are at the Entry two very low Points,
bearing North-West by North, and mutually
distant near a Mile. The Circumference of the
whole Port may be three Leagues. Along the
Shore the Coast is rocky, between this Port and
the River of *Farate*, there crosseth a Range of
Mountains, one higher than the rest.

THE third of April, they departed one Hour
before Day, rowing along the Coast; and, hav-
ing advanced nine Leagues, an Hour before Sun-
set, came to Anchor in Port *Ras al Fidid*^b, that
is, in *Arabic*, the *new Head*. In the Way they
saw some Shoals to the Right, but not so many
as they used to do.

Two Leagues from *Kilfit* there is a very good
Harbour, called *Moamaa*. And presently, from
this Point of the *Shrubs*, unto another very long
Point of Sand, about two Leagues before [or on
this Side of] the Port of *Ras al Fidid*, the Coast
lies North by West, and South by East; the
Distance is about three Leagues and a half^c.

RAS AL FIDID^d is a small, but very
pleasant, Harbour, about two Miles in Compass,
fifty-seven Leagues beyond *Swäken*. It is shaped
like a great Cauldron, and round as the Arch of
a Circle. The Entry is formed by two Points,
which lie North and South of each other, and
has eighteen Fathom Water: Within there are
thirteen. The Ground is very clean; and the
Port subject to Ruffles from no Wind but the
East. Half a League within Land, there is a
Well of very brackish Water.

It is very remarkable, that none of the Rivers
or Harbours along this Coast have any Bar or

* Meaning, we suppose, the sandy Point near *Ras al Dwaer*, or *Ras el Doer*, as in *Purchas*. This Para-
graph is very obscure, and seems to want something, perhaps, omitted between its two Abridgers. ^b In
Purchas *Rasfidid*. *Ras*, which signifies the *Head*, is used also to express a *Cape*, or *Head Land*; so that *Ras
al Fidid* may signify the *New Cape*. ^c This Paragraph is likewise very obscurely worded, if not imperfect.

^d In *Purchas*, here, and often afterwards, the Name is *Igidid*; whence we conclude it might have been written
il Giddid, or *el Giddid*, in the Original.

1541. **Bank at the Entrance**; but, on the contrary, ^a *De Castro*. they are commonly deeper at the Mouth than within. In this Port Don *John* saw Trees, whose Trunk and Branches resembled those of the Cork Tree, being covered with a Kind of Bark or Cork: In all other Respects they differed; for the Leaves were very large, thick, and green, and crossed with very large Veins. The Bud resembled the Mallows, for the Trees were then in Flower, only this was very white, and when it blooms is like the white Cockle. If you cut a Bough or Leaf of this Tree, Milk streams out as from the Teat of a Goat. Within Land there grow some Caper, whose Leaves are eaten by the *Moors*. In all this Coast he saw no other Trees, except a Grove, a little beyond *Mafua*, in marshy Grounds, near the Sea Side. They are said to be appropriated to the Joints.

Sort of Cork Trees.

No other on the Coast.

Thunder and Lightning.

Variation.

THE fourth, from Sun-rising till eleven o'Clock, they had a Storm at North-West, and then it began to thunder very hard, and hailed with the biggest Drops the Author ever saw. During these Thunders, the Wind ran through all the Points of the Compass, and at last settled North. This Day Don *John* found the Variation one Degree and a quarter to the North-East, and the Port in twenty-two Degrees of Latitude, by many Observations. But he takes Notice, that notwithstanding those Operations were performed ashore, and so great Care was taken to fix the Instrument, that it was never stirred after it was once placed, till the Whole was over; yet that they must needs have erred somewhat, because the intense Heat of the Sun had cracked the Ivory Plate in the Middle, and made a Slit wide enough to thrust in a *Portegue* of Gold.

THE sixth, an Hour before Day, they left the Port of *Jidid*, and proceeded all this Day but about three Leagues and half.

Seventh morning.

THE seventh, in the Morning, having a brisk Wind at North-West, they rowed along the Shore about three Leagues; and at eight of the Clock, fastened themselves to a rocky Shoal, that lieth before a very long Point [of Land ^a:] About Noon they set Sail, but in no small Apprehension, by Reason of the surprising Number of Shells that appeared on both Sides, so that they were forced to take in their Sails, and make Use of the Oars again. At Sun-set they came to an Anchor in a good Haven, called *Komol*, eleven Leagues from *Ras al Jidid*.

S E C T. V.

1541. *De Castro.*

Quality of the Sea and Coasts. Ports of Komol, Shaab al Yadayn, Sial, Gadenauhi, Sharm al Kiman, Shawna, Gualibo. Capes Ras al Nathef, Ras al Ant. Islands Zamorjete, Kornaka, Swarit, Konnaka, Bihuto. Remarkable Rock. Frolicksome and fiery Winds. The first Trees on the Coast.

TWO Leagues beyond *al Jidid* is a Point of Land, from which to the long flat Point *Komol*, above-mentioned, are about four Leagues North-West. Between these two Points, there is a great and famous Bay, in which, toward the North-West Point, is a very deep and close Harbour, secure against all Winds. This Point is an Island: And from hence, to another great Point, at *Komol* may be five Leagues North-West by West, making another great Bay between them. At this Point, which is low and flat, the great Mountains ranging along this Coast, do end ^b.

As for the Land, from *al Jidid*, till within half a League of the Port of *Komol*, the Coast rises in little Hills close together, and behind them within a League Distance from the Shore, are very great and high Mountains rising in Points: Which, as they advance, approach nearer the Sea, till at length they join it; and then continue their Course by the Shore, till within half a League of the Port of *Komol*.

KOMOL is sixty-eight Leagues beyond *Swad-ken*, in twenty-two Degrees thirty Minutes Latitude. This Port stands in the End of this second Bay, very near the Face of the North-West Point. Though small, 'tis very secure; for the Entrance is guarded with a dry Shoal before it, that keeps out the Sea. The Land surrounding it is flat and pleasant, inhabited by *Badwis*, a numerous People, much like the wild *Arabs*.

THREE Hours after Midnight, leaving the Port of *Komol*, they rowed along the Coast a little while, and then hoisted Sail. But an Hour before Day-light, some Foists striking upon Rocks and Shoals, they lowered their Sails, and fell to their Oars again, till Morning. The eighth, at Day-break, they came into a great and fair Bay, of which, toward the North and North-West Side, they saw no End, or any Point to bound it: And although they sailed in open Sea, the Shoals on every Side were so numerous, that with

^a This Point the Author is positive must be the Island *Starta* of *Ptolemy*, from its Latitude, and local Situation.

^b Don *John* for this Reason, takes the Point to be the Promontory of *Prionoto*, in *Ptolemy's* third Table of *Africa*.

^c In the Copy, *Badwis*, which in the *Portuguese* Orthography, answers pretty nearly to *Badwis*, which is the *Arabic* Word agreeable to the *English* Character: It signifies *People of the Desert*; and is the Name by which the *Arabs*, who live in Tents, are distinguished from those who dwell in Towns

tacking,

1541. tacking, and wandering to find the Way, they a long Point of Sand, called *Ras al Anf*^c, that is, 1541. *The Cape of the Nose*. It hath no high Land about De Castro. it, but a vast Plain without Tree or Herb. In the very Front of the Point, stands a great Temple, without any other Building near it. On every Side of it is a very clear sandy Coast, in Manner of a Bay. *Ras al Anf*, is very famous among Navigators; for being once past it, they reckon all Trouble and Danger over.

Shaab al Yadayn, THE ninth, being clear, they set Sail, and took Harbour within another great dry Shelf, extending North-East by East, called in Arabic, *Shaab al Yadayn*^a, which signifies, *The Shelf of the Hands*, because it is shaped like two Arms, wide open with their Hands. It lies at the End of a great Bay, far out to Sea. The Port is on the Side towards Land, four Leagues distant from *Ras al Nashef* East-South-East; and by the much winding of the Shelf, is shut up, and secured against all Winds.

Ras al Nashef, FROM the Point of the Cape of the Mountains, to another Point beyond it, where there are great Furze Bushes, the Coast runneth North-West by North, the Distance about three and half, or four Leagues: From this last Point, the Coasts of the great Bay wind and turn very much; and taking a large Sweep, form another great Cape, called *Ras al Nashef*^b, or *The dry Cape*. The Island of *Zemorjete*, (which they saw from the Shoal off to Sea) is distant from this Point about eight Leagues towards the East, and (according to the Moor Pilots) is the first Place from whence both Coasts may be seen: But that of *Arabia* is much the farther off. This Island is very high and barren, with another very small one close to it.

Remarks, ble THE tenth, the Sun being up, they set Sail North-North-East, the Wind blew fresh, and the Sea appeared open and navigable: About half a League from the Point, they thought they saw a Ship under Sail, but making toward it, found it was a white Rock, by which, they were informed, all Mariners are deceived.

Kornaka, Island, HENCE sailing North by East, at nine of the Clock, they came up with an Island, called *Kornaka*, and passed between it and the Land, which is about a League and half distant: This Island is small and barren; it is about half a League in Compass, and in Shape resembles a great Lizard, with its Legs sprawling out, whence noted by Navigators. It is distant from *Zemorjete*, about six Leagues North-West by West.

Ras al Anf, HALF an Hour past ten, they were up with a very

PROCEEDING along the Coast with a South-East Wind, at Noon, being about three Leagues beyond the Cape, Don John's Pilot found the Latitude twenty-four Degrees ten Minutes; whence *Ras al Anf*, must lie in twenty-four Degrees^d. Half an Hour before Sun-set, they passed by *Shwarit*, an Island two Miles from Shore. It is a Caliver Shot in Length, and near as much broad. The Land of it is very low; and in the Middle, appeared a large green Bush. On the East Side, there is a great Rock, like a little Island; and about a Mile farther, they came to Anchor among certain Shelves, some of Sand, others of Rock, in a Harbour, called in Arabic, *Sial*, a hundred and three Leagues beyond *Swaken*. In these Shelves, they saw a greater Number of Fowl than they had met with any where before in this Sea.

FROM *Ras al Nashef*, till so far as the Island *Shwarit*, there may be sixteen or seventeen Leagues. The Coast, at first, winds very much inward, and then thrusts out a very long Point of Sand, called *Ras al Anf*, which Point bears North-East by North of the other, about six great Leagues distant. From *Ras al Anf*, the Coast runs directly North-West as far as *Shwarit*, the Distance ten or eleven Leagues.

THE Sea in this Space, is foul, and full of Shoals in only three Places. The first is, to the East of the Island *Kornaka*, where is seen a great and very fair Shoal, or Ridge of Rocks, above Water, stretching a great Way towards the Coast. The second Place is, the Island *Shwarit*, which on both Sides hath Shoals and Flats, extending towards the Coast, in such Manner, that they seem to quite shut up the Passage. The third Place is *Sial*, where the Sea is crowded with such infinite Shoals and Flats, that no Part appears free from them.

^a In *Purchas*, *Xaab il Iden Shaab al Yadayn*, signifies strictly, *the Shelf of the two Hands*. ^b The Author supposes it to be the *Pentadactylus* of *Ptolemy*, (written *Pentadactilos* in *Purchas*) and says, he calls the greater *Zemorjete*, *Agathon*; but makes no Mention of the lesser. Dr. *Pecock*, in his late elaborate Map of *Egypt*, places *Pentadactylum* a little to the South of *al Kofir*.

^c In *Purchas*, sometimes *Rafelenfe*, and sometimes *Rafelenfet*. ^d Don John thinks this appears to be the ancient *Berenice*, because *Ptolemy* places it under the Tropic. And *Pliny* says, at the Summer Solstice, the Gnomon at Noon, casts no Shadow; which comes to the same Thing. But it may be presumed, the Situation, as given by *Ptolemy*, is merely accidental, resulting from the Distances, by which, he settled Places, as hath been already observed; and *Pliny* speaks from the Authority of *Ptolemy*. For, in all Probability, *al Kofir*, hereafter mentioned, is *Berenice*.

1541. THE Country from *Swäken* to *Ras al Anf*, is inhabited by the *Badwis* before-mentioned; so is the Country from thence to *Suez*, (which belongs to *Egypt*) between the Coast and *Nile*. Don *John* observes, that *Pomponius Mela*, and the rest of the antient Geographers, call the former *Ethiopians*, and the latter, *Arabs*; except *Ptolemy*, who gives them the Name of *Egyptian Arabs*; and he thinks *Ptolemy's* Authority, as the Prince of Cosmographers, ought to take Place.

THE eleventh, leaving *Sial*, they rowed about four Leagues North-West by North, and at nine of the Clock, entered a great Bay, which is called *Gadenuhi*: The Land over the Sea, leaving the Shape it had, of a Wall or Trench, becomes very mountainous; forming a double Ridge of Hills, surprisngly close.

THE Port of *Gadenuhi*, is beyond *Swäken*, one hundred and seven Leagues, and in the Latitude of twenty-four Degrees forty Minutes. Here at one of the Clock, after Noon, it was low Water; and full Sea, an Hour after the Moon appeared above the Horizon. Thence it ebbed till an Hour after she had passed the Meridian; and then began to flow again till an Hour after that Planet was set, which made full Sea.

THE Wind blowing from North-West, two or three Hours after Midnight, they departed, and in passing between the Shoal, at the North-West Point of the Bay, and the Island of *Babuto*, they struck, and stuck upon the Shoal. But got clear without Damage, and hit upon the Channel, rowing along the Shore, against the Wind, till Day. And, on the twelfth, an Hour after Sun-rise, anchored in a small but very safe Port, called in *Arabic*, *Sharm al Kimân*, that is, a Cliff, or Opening of the Mountains. 'Tis a League and half beyond *Gadenuhi*, and a hundred and eight from *Swäken*, much like the Harbour of *Räs al Fidid*.

SAILING forward along the Shore, with a fresh Gale at East-South-East, about Noon, it blew so hard, that the Sands were whirled aloft, and filled the Air like Clouds of Smoke. About Evening, the Wind blew in such Manner, that some Ships of the Fleet seemed to be in a Calm, while others round them, though but a Stone's Throw distant, had so strong a Gale, that they could not carry any Sail. Presently after, you should see the Scene change. The Vessels which had too much Wind before, would be of a sudden becalmed; and those which could not stir, for Want of it, would be put in swift Motion.

What makes this the more strange, is, that it happened when the Ships were all close together. As if the Winds were sporting with them.

DURING this Interval, there came such hot Flurries from the East and East-North-East, that they scorched like Flames of Fire. The Clouds of Dust that were raised on Shore, were driven sometimes to one Place, sometimes to another, and often were borne backwards and forwards, three or four different Ways by contrary Winds, before they fell into the Sea, over which they moved at a great Distance from Land, where the Wonder had not been so great.

THESE Winds began to take them at a Port called *Shawna*, and they went on in this sort, striking Sail, now hoisting; sometimes diverted at that which they saw, at other whiles in Dread and Fear till almost Sun-set. When they entered into a Port called *Gualibo*, that is, the Port of Trouble, having advanced this Day, and Part of the Night past, about thirteen Leagues.

FROM *Gadenuhi*, to a Port that is called *Shakara*, (encompassed with a very red Hill) the Coast runneth North-West by North, about ten Leagues; and from this red Hill, to a Point almost a League beyond *Gualibo*, there are about six Leagues North North-West. In these sixteen Leagues, the Coast is very free from Shoals, (excepting one, a League beyond the red Hill, and half a League from Shore) and is full of many fair Ports, more than the Author could have imagined in so short a Space: Among them is *Shawna*, above-mentioned, a very capacious and noted Harbour, where, according to the Report of the *Moors*, and Inhabitants, there stood formerly a famous City of the *Gentiles*. Along the Coast run an infinite Number of huge Mountains, close together, and double like the former. And beyond them, far within Land, other lofty Hills rear their Heads.

AMONG those which range the Coast, are two more remarkable than any to be met with here or elsewhere. One of them is very black, and looks as if it was singed; the other yellow: And between them are certain Heaps of Sand. Beyond the black Mountain, in a large Plain, there are many very great and high Trees, with spreading Tops. They were the first which the Author saw, that seemed domestic and proper to the Land: For those before-mentioned, a little beyond *Mafua*, are of the Kind that grow in Marshes, and by the Sea and Rivers. In like Manner, the Trees at Ports *Sharm al Kimân*, and *al Fidid*, are wild, without either Boughs or Fruit, and the Leaves

* Perhaps, *H'ad annawi* takes it to be *Ptolemy's* *Nekhesia*, because lying about the same Parallel in his Tables: But if *Kasir* be *Berence*, it must be found a great deal higher on the Coast, as Dr. *Pocock* places it.

^b In *Purchas*, *Xaona*.

^c Perhaps, *Kalábon*.

^d Hence the Author

1541. seemed naked and dry. These two Mountains, ^a and Sea, which swelled much, at Noon they entered a very fair Bay, and cast Anchor at the De Caitro. ^{1541.} and Grave, stand about two Leagues before the Port of *Sharm al Kimân*.

^{Gualibo Port} THE Port of *Gualibo*, which is an hundred and twenty-two Leagues beyond *Swâken*, resembles much, both as to Shape and Entrance, that of *Sharm al Kimân*, only, whereas the Land about this latter, is mountainous, the Country round *Gualibo*, is a vast Plain. The Entry of this Port, is between certain Rocks, or Shoals, whereon the Sea breaketh exceedingly; but the Channel is deep and large.

SECT. VI.

Tuna Port. Observation there. City of al Kofsir: Very bad Port, but nearest the Nile. Egypt known only by the Name of Riffa. Islands Salânj al Bahr, and Sheduam. Town of Tor, or al Tûr; supposed by the Author to be Elana. St. Catharine's Body, and Monastery there. Place, where the Israelites passed the Red-Sea.

THE thirteenth of April, after Sun-rise, they rowed out of the Port of *Gualibo*. The Wind blew very strong at North-West, and made the Sea swell much. At ten in the Morning, they entered a Port, called *Tuna*, a League and half beyond the other.

^{Tuna Port.} *TUNA* is a small and foul Harbour, in twenty-five Degrees thirty Minutes Latitude, one hundred twenty-three Leagues and half beyond *Swâken*. The Entrance is between certain Rocks; and within, the greatest Part of it is occupied with a Shoal, and Rocks, whereto is owing the Smallness of the Port. On the North Side, there is a Point of Land, which by its Turning, makes a good Harbour and Road against the North-West Wind. The Country about it, is a very barren Sand. On the North-West Side, toward the Land, there are three piked Mounts of Stone, made, in Don John's Opinion, to shew, that there is an Haven here.

^{The Coast.} ONE Hour before Sun-set, they fastened themselves to a Shoal, a League beyond *Tuna*. From a Point, almost one League beyond *Gualibo*, to another, a League and half beyond this Shoal, the Coast bears North North-West, the Distance four Leagues.

THE fourteenth, after they had rowed about five Leagues along the Shore, against both Wind

and Sea, which swelled much, at Noon they entered a very fair Bay, and cast Anchor at the De Caitro. ^{1541.} farther End, where it maketh a good Port, about a hundred and twenty-nine Leagues beyond *Swâken*. The Coast, in these six Leagues, bears North-West, and the Land over it, is partly plain, and partly mountainous.

THE fifteenth, having proceeded about seven Leagues North North-West, an Hour and half after Sun-rise, they came to anchor in the Port of *al Kofsir*.

AL KOSSIR ^b lies from *Swâken*, a hundred ^{Town of al} and thirty-six Leagues, and in the Latitude of ^{Kofsir.} twenty-six Degrees fifteen Minutes, as Don John found by two Observations ^c. It was seated formerly two Leagues higher on the Coast, but for Want of a Port capable of the great Refort of Shipping, it was removed higher. There are still some Remains of the ancient Town, which is called *Old al Kofsir* ^d. The new Town is very small. The Houses look like the Yards Cattle are kept in, although there is no kind of Cattle in the Place. They are built of Stone and Clay, or, sometimes only Sods, covered at Top with Mats, or the like; more, as they said, to keep off the Sun, than the Rain, which seldom falls.

THE Port is the worst on all the Coast, and ^{East Port.} the only Place that wanted Fish, which ever where else abound. 'Tis very large, and exceeding subject to easterly Winds. The Ships anchor between the Land and some small Shoals, whereon the Sea breaks. Near the Town are three Wells of Water, whereof the People drink, though scarce to be distinguished from Sea Water. The Place is quite encompassed with barren piked Mountains, scorched black again with the Sun; which, together with the Barrenness of the Soil, makes a most uncomfortable Prospect. For there grows no Manner of Herb, Grass, Bush, or Tree, in either the Coast, the Plains, or Mountains; ^e And whatever Ground may lie between the Hills and the Town, is a barren Sand, intermixed with Gravel.

THE extraordinary Barrenness of the Place, ^{N. 1. st. is} made Don John curious to inquire of the most understanding *Moors*, how they came to pitch on such a miserable Situation to inhabit. The Reason, they said, was, because it happened to be the nearest Port to the River *Nile*, fifteen or sixteen ^c

^a But five just before. ^b Or *al Kofsir*; and *al Kasseyr*. Don John writes it *Alcozer*, which, according to the English Orthography, is *Alkofer*. ^c Dr Pocock places it fifty Minutes more Southerly in his Map. ^d Don John says, this is the *Philoteris* of *Ptolemy*: But Dr Pocock places it two Degrees forty Minutes higher up, and it must be much more Northerly, in case *al Kofsir* be *Berenice*; as there is great Reason to believe, since it is still the Port of *Kept* (*Coptos*) or of *Kûs* near it, both on the *Nile*, as well as the nearest Port to that River on all the Coast, as *Berenice* was. Dr. Pocock supposes *Old Kofsir* to be the same with *Myos*. It seems rather, we presume, to have been *Berenice* itself. ^e Don John must either have mistaken the *Moors*, or the Translator him; for the Distance is not above three or four Days Journey on Horseback. When the Antients say six or seven stages, they are to be considered as easy Journeys.

1541. Days Journey distant; and so most convenient for lodging the Provisions, with which all the Towns on this Coast are supplied by their respective Ships. *Egypt*, they said, was one continued Plain, and the most fruitful in the World in Cattle, Horses, Camels, and Victuals; that these last were conveyed up *Nile*, to a Place nearest *al Kofsir*; and thence carried by Land to this Port. But that the Karawans were often attacked in the Way by the *Badwis*, who sometimes assaulted *al Kofsir* itself; which obliged them, for their Security, to build their Houses with Stone, and Earth. They also told the Author, that the Name of *Egypt* was unknown to them: But that all the Country from *al Kofsir*, (and a great Way behind) to *Alexandria*, was called *Riffa* ^a.

*Egypt call'd
Riffa.*

THE eighteenth, in the Morning, they fastened themselves to a Shoal, four Leagues beyond *al Kofsir*, and at Noon, set Sail again. The nineteenth, half an Hour past eight, being taken with a Gust from North North West, they put into an Island, called *Safary al Bahr*.

*Safary al
Bahr.*

SAFARY AL BAHIR ^b, that is, a *Sea-Sponge*, stands thirteen Leagues beyond *al Kofsir*, in the Latitude of twenty-seven Degrees. It is in Length about two Leagues, and less than a Quarter in Breadth. The Soil is sandy, producing neither Trees nor Water. There be two Harbours; one on the North Side of the Island, the other, on the South Side. That to the North, is secure against all Weathers. The deepest Part of the Channel is towards the Land, because on the Island Side there be some Shoals. In the Mouth of the great Port, there are certain Shoals above which there is no Danger in the Day-time. At Rock in the Entrance of the Port, the Sea is surprisingly full of Nooks, Ports, and Islands.

THE twentieth of *April*, at Sun-set, they had sailed North North West, about six Leagues beyond *Safary al Bahr*. From hence there is a League and half, North North West, to a sandy Point, after which, the Coast, with its Windings, makes a great Bay, containing many Islands, Ports and Creeks.

*Sheduum I
land.*

THE twenty-first, by Day, they came up with an Island called *Sheduum*, and rowing along the Side facing the Coast of *Arabia*, an Hour after

a Sun-rise arrived at the Northern Cape, or Point of the Island.

SHEDUAM ^c is very high and craggy, being all a hard Rock: It is in Length three Leagues, and two in Breadth, and beyond *al Kofsir*, twenty Leagues. There is no Water in it, nor any kind of Trees. It is equally distant from the Coasts of *Egypt* and *Arabia*. Five Leagues towards the North-West, there are three smaller Islands, very low, with Shoals between them ^d.

b LEAVING the said Point, with Design to cross over to the Coast of *Arabia*, they went on rowing; but soon after, the Wind rising from South-East, they hoisted Sail, and stood North-West. At eleven in the Morning, they were with the Land of the Stony *Arabia*, and sailing along Shore, two Hours before Sun-set, came to Anchor at the Town of *Tor*, about twelve Leagues from *Sheduum*, North by West.

TOR ^e stands in the Latitude of twenty eight Degrees ten Minutes ^f, on a very fair and long Strand. A Cannon-shot before you come to it, you meet with twelve Palm-Trees close by the Shore; and from thence inwards, there lies a Plain extending to the Foot of certain high Mountains. Which beginning at the Gulf of *Ormuz*, run along the Coast, bolting over the Sea, to this Place; and then turn off to the North-East, dividing *Arabia Petrea*, from *Arabia Felix*. On the Tops of them some devout Christians lead a retired Life. A little beyond the Town, a Mountain begins gradually to rise by the Shore, thrusting a great and high Point into the Sea ^g. It seems to those in the Port to go no farther, making shew of three huge separate Mountains.

*Torun and
Harbour.*

THE Town is small, but pleasantly seated. It is inhabited by *Christians*, who speak the *Arabic*, and have a *Monastery* there of *Greek Fryers*, of the Order of *Monjerat*, where is kept the Image of *St Catharine*, of *Mount Sinai*. Parallel to the Shore of the Town, there runs a very long rocky Bank; which makes between it and the Land, a small, but very safe and quiet Harbour. The Breadth of the Sea at *Tor*, is about three Leagues ^h. Don *John* is positive this Place must be the ancient *Elana*; and denies there is any such Gulf on the Coast of *Arabia*, as the *Elanotic*, at the End of which the Ancients place that City,

^a Or *al Rif*, a Name more peculiar to Part of lower *Egypt*. *Reaudent*, in his History of the Patriarchs of *Alexandria*, p. 457 says, it is Part of the Maritima Province, meaning that bordering on the *Mediterranean*: But, it seems to belong to all the Maritime Parts. A few trifling Remarks, which serve only to shew how little the *Portuguese* knew of *Egypt* at that Time, are omitted.

^b In the Original *Suffange al Bahar*. In *Arabic*, *Safary*, *Sifony*, *Safiny* and *Sifony* (according to the different Pointing of the same Radicals) all signify a *Sponge*, which is visibly derived from the *Arabic* Word.

^c This Island is not expressed in Dr. *Pocock's* Map. ^d These Isles lie two Leagues North-West of *Sheduum*. Don *John* took the Latitude of the most Northern in their Return.

^e Rather *Tur*, or *al Tur*. Don *John* writes it *Toro*. ^f If this Observation be exact, the great *Peninsula*, on which *al Tur* is situate, must be extended too far to the South, in Dr. *Pocock's* Map. ^g This probably is *Yebul Tur*, a little to the North in the said Map, which gives Name to the whole *Peninsula*.

^h Thus agrees with Dr. *Pocock's* Map.

1541. affirming *Tor* to be seated on a very long and a strait Coast*.

THE *Friers* informed Don *John*, that Mount *Sinai*, was thirteen small Journeys, which makes eighteen Leagues within Land. They believing that the *Portugueze* came with a numerous Army to take the Body of St. *Catharine* from them, feigned that it was carried from hence with great Solemnity, four Months before in a gilt Chariot to *Kairo*, at the Request of the *Christian* Inhabitants of that City, and deposited in a Monastery there, because the *Arabs* frequently assaulted the Monastery, did it much Damage, and put the *Friers* to great Fear and Expence, to redeem themselves from their Insults. But this he learned from a *Moor*, was a Fiction. They told him also, that many *Hermits* inhabited the boundary Mountains before mentioned, and that in the Plains, were several *Christian* Towns.

They could not exactly tell where the *Israelites* passed the Sea, but said it must needs lie between *Tor* and *Suez*. However, an intelligent *Moor* told him the Tradition was, that the Passage was at *Tor*. Where *Musa* or *Moses* dividing the Sea, twelve Paths were made, for the *Israelites*; and the *Egyptians* drowned were 600,000. Don *John* approves this Opinion. thinking if the Passage had been at *Suez*, as many hold, the *Egyptians* who were Horse against Foot, need not have followed the *Israelites* into the Sea, but might have gone round the End of the Sea, and overtaken them, for in all Miracles, he says, there is a Shew of Reason.

THE same *Moor* told him also, that none were suffered to enter *Suez*, but those appointed by the Governor of *Kairo*, which they call *Mess^{rs}*, to keep the Gallies, or to come within two Leagues of it under Pain of Death. Which agrees with what the *Friers* had acquainted him, that since *Turkish* Gallies had been at *Suez*, the Road to *Kairo*, which lay through that Place, was removed two Leagues distant.

SECT. VII.

The Fleet arrives at *Suez*. Description of it. Canals cut by ancient Kings from the Nile. Their Use. Coasts of the Sea Bay on the Side of Egypt, supposed by the Author to be the *Elanitic*. The Tides, Winds and Air in this Part of the Sea.

THE twenty-second of April, the Fleet left *Tor* in the Morning, and the twenty-fourth were in the Latitude of twenty-nine Degrees, seventeen Minutes.

THE twenty-sixth setting Sail, at eleven of the

* As this Point is a Matter of great Moment in Geography, it deserves to be examined. It is observable, that Don *John* allows both *Ptolemy* and *Strabo* make the *Red-Sea* terminate in two large Gulfs, one towards *Egypt*, the other towards *Aravia*, at the End of which latter they place it. Yet here he rejects the Authority of those Geographers, alledging that they had been misinformed, because *Tor* was seated on a very long and strait Coast. He likewise cites *Ptolemy*, as making the Latitude of *Elana* twenty nine Degrees fifteen Minutes. Yet accounts the Difference between that Situation and the Altitude he found at *Tor*, of no Significance here, although in former Cases he held *Ptolemy's* Tables for infallible. But that *Elana* is *Tor* (he says) farther appears from hence, that *Ptolemy* places no Town between *Elana*, and the City of *Herods* (or *Suez*) at the End of the *Arabic* Gulf; and that at present there is no Habitation betwixt *Suez* and *Tor*, nor is the Country capable of being inhabited, on account of its Roughness, Sterility, and Want of Water. What seems still stranger, is, that this Author should after all, admit of a Gulf of *Elana* (as will be seen presently) and yet place it at a great Distance, and on the opposite Side of the Sea, to that on which *Elana* stands. However that be, it is certain, that not the Antients, but Don *John*, has been misinformed about this Matter. For not only the *Arab* Geographers, give a particular Account of this Gulf or Bay (as will appear from *Alu'Isidi's* Description of the *Red-Sea*, which follows this Journal) but the Certainty of its Existence, has been proved by two late *English* Travellers, Dr *Shaw*, and Dr *Pocock*, as has been already mentioned. See before p 38 c. This Knot of Errors, which Don *John* fell into, is owing to his not having sufficiently examined the Coast, on the Side of *Arabia*. For until the Fleet came to the Island *Shediam*, they had sailed along the *African* Shore, and then leaving the North Part of the Island, past over to the Coast of *Arabia*, for the first Time. Where it may be presumed, they fell with the Land somewhat to the North of the South-West Point of the great Peninsula, which forms the two Gulfs before mentioned. This Cape is in *de l'Isle's*, as well as Dr *Pocock's* Map, called Cape *Mabont*. But still, as that Island seems to lie near the Mouth of the Eastern Gulf in Question (the North-End of it, being at least eighteen or twenty Miles more South than the Cape) it is surprizing Don *John*, and the whole Fleet, should overlook it, as we find (by the former Journal) the *Venetian*, who made the Voyage along the *Arabian* Coast, had done before. What Don *John* says with regard to *Elana*, being the same with *Aylan*, we shall not contest it, the Similitude of Names, as well as Authority of *Strabo*, which he alledges among the rest, being very good Proofs. But we shall see presently, that the *Arabs* place *Aylan* at the End of a great Gulf; and the Distance he cites from *Strabo*, of 1260 Stadia or Furlongs, from *Gaza* to *Aylan*, (supposing it to be exact) is a farther Proof, that *Aylan* cannot be the same with *Tor*. We shall only observe farther, that this Author so positively denying, that there is any such Gulf, as the *Elanitic*, on the Side of *Arabia*, may possibly be the Reason, why we do not find it expressed in the Maps of *Sansin*, or others, published before *de l'Isle's*. In *Purchas*, *Mecara*, by Mistake, we suppose of the Prefs for *Misara*, or *Mesara*, which comes near *Mesr*, as the *Turks* call it, and *Kairo*, is an *Italian* Corruption of *Kubra*.

Clock,

1541. Clock, they were close by the Shore, where they found all the Fleet. Then rowing a little along the Shore, they cast Anchor, but two Hours before Sun-set, they weighed again, the Wind being at North, and rowed along the Coast; and having gone only one League and half all Day, before Sun-set put in behind a Point of *Arabia* (which is one League due East of the North-West Point of the said Gulf) where there is good Shelter against the North Winds. This Point is short of *Suez*, three small Leagues; and about half a League within the Land, is the Fountain of *Moses*, whose Water, they say, is very pleasant. As soon as they had cast Anchor, they went on Shore, and saw the End of the *Red-Sea* and Masts of the *Turkish* Ships. They lay at Anchor till it was Day, the Wind blowing hard at North.

Fountain of
Moses

Arrive at
Suez.

THE twenty-seventh, the Wind blowing hard at North-West, at ten of the Clock they departed from this Point, rowing along the Coast, and being about one League from *Suez*, Don *John* went before with two *Katürs* to view the Situation of the Town and Place of Landing. They arrived at three in the Afternoon, where they saw many Troops of Horse in the Field, and in the Town two great Bands of Soldiers, who shot at them several Times from a Block-House. The *Turkish* Fleet consisted of forty-one great Gallies, and nine great Ships. After this, they passed on to the Bay, on the West Side of the Town; and came to Anchor near the Shore in five Fathom Water, where is a very good Harbour for Ships. The Ground was a soft and very small Sand. This Day at Sun-set they saw the Moon.

Suez Heroo-
polis.

SUEZ is, for certain, the City of the *Heroes*, and *Cleopatra*, which some, as *Strabo* says, called *Arfinoe*. For it differeth nothing in Latitude and Situation; as appears both from *Ptolemy*^a, and *Strabo*^b, who place that City at the End of the *Arabic* Gulf towards *Egypt*. *Pliny*, in the sixth Book of his Natural History, seemeth to call this Port, *Danaos*, by Reason of the Trenches, which they opened from *Nilus* to this Sea.

Suez de-
scribed

SUEZ stands in the Latitude of twenty-nine Degrees, forty-five Minutes, and is the nearest Port to *Kairo* in this Sea. From it, across the *Isthmus* to *Pelusium* [now *Tina*] at one of the seven Mouths of *Nilus*, may be forty Leagues Journey;

and according to *Strabo* 900 Furlongs. This is the Port, whither *Cleopatra*, Queen of *Egypt*, commanded the Ships to be carried by Land from the *Nile*, after *Antony's* Overthrow by *Cæsar*, in order to fly to *India*. Likewise, *Sesosthis* King of *Egypt*, and *Darius* of *Persia*, undertook to open a Trench from hence to the *Nile*, for joining the *Arabic* Gulf to the *Mediterranean*; but both left the Work unfinished, supposing the latter higher. Afterwards, *Ptolemy* made a Trench of an hundred Foot broad, and thirty Foot deep. But when it was almost completed, he desisted, either for fear that the Water of *Nile*, mixing with that of the Sea, would become salt; or as others report, lest *Egypt* should be drowned. The Water of the *Arabic* Gulf, having been found by leveling Instruments, to be three Cubits higher than the Land of *Egypt*, as is related by *Diodorus Siculus*, *Pliny*, *Pomponius Mela*, *Strabo*, and others.

SUEZ at present is small enough, and Don *John* is of Opinion it would have come to nothing before that Time, if the *Turkish* Army had not lain there. The Situation of it is in this Manner. In the Front of the Land, at the End of this Sea, facing the South, there is opened a Mouth not very large, by which a Creek, or Arm of the Sea entering a little within Land, it presently widens along the Coast towards the West, till opposed by a little Mountain, which alone riseth in those Parts; from which to the Mouth, and Entering of the Creek, (the Creek, and firm Land remaining on the North Side, the Nook and End of this Sea on the South Side, and the little Mountain on the West) all the Space that is contained, is a very long and narrow Tongue, or Point of Sand^c, where *Suez* is situated, and the Gallies and Navy of the *Turks* lie aground.

In the Town there is a little Castle; and without, two high and ancient Towers, Reliques (Don *John* thinks) of the great City of the *Heroes*: But on the Point of Sand, where the Creek enters, there standeth a great Bulwark of modern Work; which defendeth the Mouth of the River, and likewise scoureth the Coast by the Stern of the Gallies, in case any should attempt to land in that Place. Besides, there runs between the Gallies and the Strand, a Trench, with a Ditch, which appears like a Hill; so that the Place is

^a TABLE III Of Africa.

^b Geogr. lib. 17

^c In *Purchas*, *Soez*, the *Arabs* write *Swiz*.

^d Which, as *Kircher* observes (*Or. dip.* Vol. I. p. 66) is contrary to *Hydrostatics*. This Communication was actually opened about the Year 635, by *Amrû*, who conquered *Egypt* for *Mourwiah*, the first *Ommiyan Khalifah* of *Damascus*; and shut up again about 140 Years after by *Abûjâsar al Mansûr*. It served for transporting the Corn sent to *Arabia*; and was called *al Khaly al Amir al Momnin*, the Canal of the Emperor of the Faithful. Which was the Title of the *Khalifas*.

^e Perhaps it ought to be towards the East

This perplexed Account of the Port, delivered in the Author's Words, is rendered somewhat more intelligible, by the Parenthesis we have inserted. But does not agree with Dr *Pocock's* Relation, or Map, which makes the Sea terminate in two Bays, divided by the Point or Tongue of Land, on which *Suez* stands. That to the North-West is very wide at the Mouth, and properly the End of the Sea. The other to the North-East, is narrow at the Entrance, and divided by another Tongue of Land into two Ports

1541. strong both by Nature and Art. It seemed to the a the End of the sixteen or seventeen Leagues, to 1541.
 De Castro. Author, not possible to land in any Place, except behind the Hill on the West Side, where they will be secure from their Artillery, and by Means of the Eminence, might take the Town. But then this Strand is shoally all along, about a Bow Shot [from Shore] and the Ground a soft Clay, and sticking Sand, as the Author found; which makes the Landing very inconvenient.

1 of the
 Canals.

THE Author was informed, that near the Fountain of *Moses*, three Leagues from *Suez* towards *Tor*, there stood formerly a great City, some Buildings of which are still to be seen, but they could not tell the Name of it, and that the Trench made formerly from *Kairo* to *Suez*, though filled up and defaced, was still discernable to those who travel that Road. Some told him, that the Design of opening this Canal, was not to join the *Red-Sea* and *Nile*, but only to convey the Water to a City that was there, that it was fifteen Leagues, or three easy Stages, to *Kairo*, through a desert sandy Country; and that, in and about *Suez*, it seldom rained. But that when it did, it continued a long Time; and that all the Year, the North Wind blew with great Force.

Coasts of
 Egypt.

FROM *Tor* to *Suez*, are twenty-eight Leagues without any Island, Bank, or Shoal, that may obstruct Navigation. Departing from *Tor* through the midst of the Channel, you run about sixteen Leagues North-West by North. Hitherto the Coasts are equidistant three Leagues. But, at the End of these sixteen or seventeen Leagues, the Lands begin to close in such Sort, that from Coast to Coast, the Distance is about one League; and having continued so for two Leagues, the Coast of *Egypt* thrusts out a very low and long Point: Then winding deep within the Land, it runs more than ordinary crooked; and having made a very spacious Bay*, enters the Sea again on the other Side, with a very great and high Point, five Leagues distant from the first, North-West by North, and three small Leagues short of *Suez*. The Land by the Shore of this Bay, is very high and rugged, as well as dry and barren, and the Bay itself so deep, that unless you go very near the Shore, you shall not have less than fifty Fathom Water. The Bottom a soft and Sand-like Ooze. This Bay the Author holds for certain, to be the *Elanitic Gulf*^b.

Elanitic
 Gulf.

THE Channel in the middle Distance, from

WITH respect to the Land along the Coast ^{Coasts of A} ^{rabi.} of *Arabia*, a Caliver-shot beyond *Tor*, there riseth very near the Shore a Hill, which for the first six Leagues, appears streaked with Red from one Side to the other, delightful to behold. Then continuing its Course ten or eleven Leagues more, it makes a large and high Head. Afterwards turning off gradually, it forsakes the Coast till it comes within a League short of *Suez*, where it endeth, leaving a Plain between, which in some Places hath a League in Breadth, and in others nearer to *Suez*, a League and an half. By this Hill towards *Tor*, the Author saw great Heaps of Sand, reaching to the very Top, and loose Sands driven into the Cliffs and Breaches thereof, although there were no sandy Places between the Hill and the Sea. Whence he judged of the great Force and Violence of the cross Winds, (or those blowing from the West, and West North-West) on this Part of the Coast, that could drive the Sand from the Sea, to such a Distance and Height. On the Side of *Egypt* opposite to *Tor*, there run certain great and high Mountains overlooking the Coast, which about seventeen Leagues beyond, open and descend even with the Plain: But presently rise again, very high, and keep continually along the Sea, till they come a League short of *Suez*, where they terminate (or turn off).

DON *John* having diligently examined the Flux, and Re-flux of the Tide from *Tor* to *Suez*, found them to be neither greater nor smaller, ^{Tide} than they are in other Parts of the Sea^d. Whence (says he) appeareth the Falshood of some Writers, who affirm, that Paths were not opened for the *Jews* to pass through it; but that the Water ebbed so much in this Place, as to give the

* This Point in another Place, is said to be twenty Leagues beyond *Tor*, and fifty-two from *al Kofin*. There is no Sign of this Bay, or the Capes in Dr *Pocock's* Map. ^b Don *John* on this Occasion, falls foul again on the ancient Geographers, for placing the *Elanitic Gulf*, on the other Side of the Sea, and as it were, to fix the Blunder upon them, repeats their Words. He is particularly offended with *Ptolemy*. That Author (says he) evidently assigns the *Elanitic Gulf*, to the Coast of *Arabia*, where *Tor* now standeth; at which (he goes on) I cannot but wonder every Time I consider, that he was born at *Alexandria*, a City very near these Parts, where he dwelt and wrote his *Geography*. All this is only a further Proof, how far the Author's Oversight in his Voyage, carried him astray.

^c This Account of the Disposition of the Coast from *Tor* to *Suez*, agrees very well with the excellent Map of *Egypt*, so often mentioned.

^d In 1716, on the first of *June* and second of the Moon, the Tide went out at the Convent of *St. Paul*, [almost opposite to *Tor*] 110 Paces from twelve at Night, to six in the Morning. See Dr *Pocock's* Observations on *Egypt*, p. 128.

1541. *Israelites*, who waited for the Refcels of the Tide, a
De Castro an Opportunity of passing over dry from one
Shore to the other.

Point of Cleo-
patra.

DON John, from the Observation he made of the Coast of *Egypt*, concludes it was not possible for the Canals spoken of before, to be cut from the *Red-Sea* in more than two Places. The first at the Opening of the Mountains, seventeen Leagues beyond the Parallel of *Tor*, and eleven from *Suez*; the other at the End of the Sea where *Suez* stands. And this last Place he judges the more likely of the two, because there the Land is very low, the Distance to *Nile* shorter, and withal a Port is to be found. Whereas there is none besides in all the Space before-mentioned, which is also waste. Moreover, the Mountains on this Side of the Sea being all hard Rock, as well as those on the other Side, it would be impossible to cut a Passage through them. For the above Reasons the Author thinks it manifest, that *Suez* was the Port to which *Cleopatra* caused Ships to be carried c from the *Nile*, to transport her to *India*.

At of the
Sea.

IN this Passage from *Tor* to *Suez*, Don John made three other Remarks: First, that contrary to what is reported of *Egypt*, the Heaven was overcast with thick and black Clouds. However, he allows that though the Parts over the Sea may be subject to Vapours which ascend from it, yet the inland Parts may, at the same Time, be serene and free from them; as is seen at *Lisbon*, when, at that Instant, the Sky is darkened with Mists, d and it rains at *Sintia*, which is but four Leagues off. Secondly, this Part of the Sea is subject to violent and sudden Storms. For that when the North Wind, which mostly reigns there, blows ever so little, it makes the Sea run high, and swell in a tempestuous Manner. The Shallowness of the Gulf, he says, can be no Cause of this. For excepting that near the *Egyptian* Coast is a little shoaly, all the rest is very deep. Perhaps the constant blowing of the Wind from the North Point is the Reason, that in the Night all the Way from *Toro* to *Suez*, he felt the most violent and piercing Colds, he could remember to have been seized with. But when the Sun was up, the Heat was insupportable. Thirdly, that here he saw certain *Sea Foams*, otherwise called *Evil Waters*, the greatest he ever beheld, being as large as a Target, of a whitish dun Colour. They do not pass below *Tor*, for beyond that Place they are very small, but numerous; being f bred in the Sea, about which they swim.

SECT. VIII.

Fleet leaves Suez. Observation at the Isles near Sheduam. Ports of Azallaihe, Bohalel Sol-

meh. Account of the Badwis. Farate, Mas- 1541.
sua, Dahlak. Name of the Red-Sea. Opinions De Castro.
of Ancients and Moderns, false. True Cause of
it. The Name unknown to the Arabs. They re-
turn to Goa.

THE twenty-eighth of April, in the Morn- They leave
ing, they departed from *Suez*, to return to- *Suez*.
ward *Mafua*, and having ran about twenty
Leagues, at Sun-set, were one League short of
a sharp and red Pike, which stands over the Sea.
At Night they coasted *Arabia* with their Foresails
only, the Wind blowing hard at North North-
West; and two Hours within Night came to
Anchor near the Shore, in three Fathom Water:
The Sky was very dark, and covered with black
Clouds. The twenty-ninth, in the Morning,
setting Sail at nine o'Clock, they cast Anchor at
Tor, but presently weighed again, and went to *Tor*.
an Haven about a League from thence, called,
the Watering of Suliman, where they took in
Water, of which they found Plenty, (digging
Pits in the Sand, a Stone's Cast from the Sea)
but it was brackish.

THE thirtieth, departing in the Morning,
half an Hour past ten, they put into the first of
the three Islands, which lie two Leagues North-
West of *Sheduam*. Here Don John went ashore *Sheduam*,
with a Pilot, and found the Latitude by the Sun's
Meridian Altitude, twenty-seven Degrees, forty
Minutes.

THE first of May, at Sun-rise, they set Sail,
and, about Evening, reached a great Island, two
Leagues in Length, which thrust out a Point
very close to the Continent; and, between it and
Land, there is a very good and safe Harbour for
all Ships against all Winds.

THE second of May, at Sun-set, they an- Kallama
chored in the Port of *Goelma* ^b, that is, the Port ^{Port}
of *Water*: For, a little within Land, there is a
dry Brook, which serves to carry off the Floods,
which, in Winter, descend from the Mountains,
where, digging a little, you find fresh Water.
Here is a Well also, though not very plentiful.
This Port lies four Leagues to the North North-
West of *al Kofir*, and is only fit for small Vessels,
which lie here secure from the North and North-
West Winds.

THE fourth, they rowed along the Shore; Azallaihe
and, about Sun-set, came to an Anchor in a Port, ^{Port}
called *Azallaihe*, two Leagues beyond *Shakara* ^c,
to the South-East. This Port is small, but very
good, lying between *Shakara*, and the black Hil-
lock. They lay all Night at Anchor, the Wind
being at North North-West.

BOHALEL SHAME is a deep, safe, and Bohalel Sol-
capacious Port, so called from one *Bohalel*, an e-
meh Port.

^a Sun's Altitude a little less than eighty Degrees; the Declination seventeen Degrees, thirty-six Minutes.

^b Rather *Kallama*, or *Kallama*

^c Mentioned before, p. 121.

1541. minent *Badwi* (who used to sell Cattle to Ships a from *Zeyla* to *Swâken*, fight with the *Abeshi*; 1541. that arrived) and *Shame*, Land ^a, as much as to those from *Swâken* to *Al Kofsir*, with the *No-* De Castro. say, *Bobale's Land*. Here they found a handsome Tomb, with a House, like a little Chapel, built over it, where an *Arab*, of *Mohammed's* Kindred, was buried; who, crossing the Coasts, ended his Days here. There hung a Guidon, or Ancient of Silk, with many Arrows about the Grave; and the Walls were garnished with a great Number of Bulls, laid over Strings. At the Head of the Grave stood a Table with a great Epitaph thereon; and, about the House, were many Waters, and very fragrant smelling Things. Here the *Sharif's* *Juda*, and great Prelates, gave Indulgences, and granted Pardons to every one that should visit this House: But the Offerings and Reverence which the *Portuguese* paid it, was to plunder the House, and afterwards burn it to the Ground. In this Port, there are many Foot-steps of Tigers, wild Goats, and other Beasts, which came to the Sea, as it were, to seek Water to drink.

The Badwis. THE Author having often mentioned the *Badwis* ^b, in this Journal, thinks it therefore, incumbent on him to give some Account of them. *Badwi* ^c, in good *Arabic*, signifieth a Man who lives wholly by Cattle. These People are properly the *Troglodites Ophiosagi*, mentioned by *Ptolemy*, *Pliny*, *Pomponius Mela*, and other Authors. The Mountains and Sea Coasts, from *Melinda* and *Magadoxa*, in *Africa*, round by the Cape of *Guardafui*, and the *Abeshin* Coast to *Suez*; and round the whole Coast of *Arabia*, as far as the Streights of *Ormûz*, are inhabited, or rather occupied by them.

These Moors. THE *Badwis* are wild Men, amongst whom is no civil Society, no Truth nor Civility: They worship *Mohammed*, and are very bad *Moors* [*Mohammedans*.] They are given to Stealth and Rapine, above all other People. They eat raw Flesh, and drink Milk: Their Habit is mean and filthy. They are exceeding swift and nimble. They fight both on Foot and Horse-back; their Weapons are Darts. They are never at Peace with their Neighbours, but continually at War with every Body. Those who dwell along the Sea,

THE tenth of *May*, by Day, they weighed Anchor from the Port of *Al Jidid* ^e; and an Hour before Sun-set, fastened on a Shoal, about four Leagues South of *Farate*, where there is an excellent Haven; and so large, that the End of it was beyond the Reach of Sight. It lies almost East South-East, and West North-West, but is very crooked and winding.

THE two and twentieth, by Day-break, they were one League short of the great Grove, four Leagues from *Masua* ^b: The Wind was off the Land. About nine o'Clock, beginning to blow fresh, from the North North-East, they entered at Noon, into the Port of *Masua*, where they were received with great Joy and Feasting by the rest of the Fleet.

FROM the Day they arrived at *Masua*, till the fifteenth of *June*, the Winds blew continually at North, North North-East, and North North-West; but from thence, to the seventh of *July*, they blew at East, East South-East, and South-East, often very furiously. The last Day of *June*, at Night, they had such a violent Storm from South-East, that it drove the Galleons; which ran great Danger of striking aground. This Storm being accompanied with much Rain

^a Rather perhaps, *Bobale's Shomeb*, that is, *Bobale's* Portion or Lot. ^b In the *Portuguese*, *Badoies*, which, reduced to the *English* Orthography, is *Badwis*.

^c Or *Badawi*, signifies one who lives in the Field. See before, p. 59 Note ^e. In *Purchas* it is written *Badoil*, in this Place, and a Distinction made, as if *Badoies* was the Plural: But it must be an Error in the Translator, or Copist. For there is no such Word in *Arabic*, as *Badoil*; and *Badâwi* is the Plural of *Badawi*, differing only by the Addition of the quiescent *Alif*, which we have marked with a Circumflex.

^d Or *Nubi*, called by us, *Nubians*. ^e To understand this, it must be observed, that the Field *Arabs* are always at Enmity with those who live in Cities; not that these along the Coast are a different People from the *Arabs* within Land, as *Don John*; from this Circumstance, seems to consider them: For these *Badwis* inhabit the Inlands, as well as the Coasts; and those in *Africa* are of the same Race.

^f Whether these are the Words of *Don John*; or of the Translator, or *Purchas*, both of whom abridged this Journal (in their Way) we cannot determine.

^g The Journal hereabouts seems imperfect, or not regularly kept; for we are not told, that the Fleet arrived either at this Port, or *Bobale's Shomeb*. ^h Here and several Times alter, it is written *Macnaa*.

1541. and dreadful Thunders, there fell a Thunder-bolt down by the Mast of a Galleon, and raced it all. Likewise the second of July, they had another very great Storm from the East, which unfastened many Ships, and lasted most Part of the Day. From thence, to the seventh, they had other Storms, and between that Day and the ninth, two more. But they were not violent.

Dallaka
Wind

THE ninth of July, 1541, one Hour after Sun-rise, they set Sail from Masua. The eleventh, by Day break, they were two or three Leagues short of the North Point of Dallaka, and between certain flat Islands, which have some Woods, and lie scattering thereabouts. Wherefore they hoisted all their Sail, and went aloof as much as they could to go between two of them. The Wind being very fair at North-West, they sailed North-East and by North, and, having doubled a Shoal, came to Anchor. Two Hours after Noon they set Sail again, with a fifth North North East Wind, along the Island of Dallaka, and, an Hour before Sun-set, they were with an Island of Sand, very flat, called Dorat Milkuna, from which, on all Sides, proceeded great Shoals. After Sun-set they were a League short of the Island of Shamaa. Between which and the West Point of Dallaka, facing the Coast of the *Abebr*, is the most frequented Channel for Masua. All the Coast of Dallaka, which they passed in View of, bore North North-West, and South South-East, and is exceeding low.

THE eighteenth, by Day-break, they saw the Mouth of the Streights, being about three Leagues from it, with all the Armada lying at Hull, and presently set Sail all together.

DON John thinks it requisite here, before he leaves the Red-Sea, to enquire into the Reason^a that moved the Ancients to give it that Denomination, and whether it differs in Colour from other Seas.

Pliny
Red Sea.

He observes, that Pliny^b mentions several Opinions concerning this Name: As first, that it is derived from Erythros^c, a King who reigned there, because Erythros, in Greek, signifies Red. Others imagined, that the Reflection of the Sun produceth a reddish Colour in the Surface of the Water. Some held that the Sand and Coasts were red, others, that the Water was naturally of that Hue. And of these Opinions Authors

chose which they liked. The Portuguese, who, before this Time, had made Voyages up the De Castro Streights, (though not to the End of the Sea) affirmed, that the Arabian Shores being very red, the Dust that was blown off it into the Sea, tinged the Water with red Streaks.

DON John, who, to discover the Truth or Falshood of these Notions, from the Time he left Sokotora, never ceased, Day nor Night, to observe the Completion of the Water, and the Coast, affirms, that the Sea, far from being naturally red, is of the Colour of other Seas, and that the Dust blown from the Coasts, which they often saw, did not give it that Colour, nor was capable of doing it. The Land, on both Sides, being generally very brown, as if scorched, and in some Places black, in others, white, the Sands being of the same Colours. Indeed, in three Places, he saw the Mountains streaked with Veins of Red. But then they lay far beyond Swaken, towards Suez, where the Portuguese never were. Besides, the three Hills which appear thus, are of a very hard Rock, and the adjacent Country of the usual Colour.

THE Truth is, that this Sea is naturally of the same Colour, from Beginning to End; as is demonstrable, by taking up the Water in different Parts of it: But then, it must be confessed, that in many Places it seems, by Accident, to be red, and also green and white. The Cause of this. From Swaken to al Kofir, which is 136 Leagues, the Sea is exceeding full of Shoals, and Shelves of Coral Stone: So called, because in Growth and Colour they resemble Coral so exactly, as to deceive those who want Skill to distinguish between them: For this Stone grows like a Tree, and in Clusters, spreading its Branches, as the Coral doth. There are two Sorts, one exceeding white, the other very red; and the Shoals, which consist of them, are, in some Places, covered with green Ouze, or Slime, which, in other Parts, is of an Orange-tawny.

Now the Water of this Sea being more transparent and clear, especially from Swaken upwards, than any Water in the World besides; (so that the Bottom may be seen in twenty Fathom deep) therefore it takes its Colour from the Reflection of the Ground over which it flows. For Instance, when the Shoals are covered with the green Ouze, or Slime, the Water above appears of a deeper Green than the Weeds them-

^a De Faria, Vol 2 p 130. says, he wrote a Treatise on this Subject

^b Hist. Nat. Lib. 6. cap. 23.

^c Erythros, by Dr. Hyde, (in his Notes on Perisfol) Dr. Cumberland, (in his Remarks on Sanboniotho) and other Authors, is supposed to be a Translation of Edom, the Name of Esau, from whence it is conjectured this Sea, as well as Idumea, took its Denomination: But this does not seem probable, for two Reasons, first, because the Jews do not call it the Red-Sea, but the Sea of Weeds, Yam Suf, and then the Ancients included all the Ocean between the Coasts of Arabia and India, under the Name of the Erythrean, or Red-Sea, of which the Persian Gulf, as well as the Arabic, was reckoned a Branch.

1541. selves; and when the Ground of them is only a Table of the Latitudes observed in the foregoing Voyage. Abū'l-feda.
De Castro Sand, then the Sea appears white: But wherefoever they were of red Coral, or Coral Stone, covered with red Weeds, there the Sea looked very red; and because the Shoals were, for the most Part, of red Coral, and consequently more of the Sea looked red, than either green or white, for this Reason Don John conceives, that it had the Name of the *Red-Sea* given it, rather than that of the green or white.

Proved by Experiments. DON John reckons this no small Discovery, and the Way he made the Experiment was, by causing the Foist to be fastened often upon the Shoals, where sometimes it would be so shallow, that the Vessel would touch; and commanded Divers to fetch up Stones from the Bottom. Sometimes it happened, that the Sailors could walk half a League together on the Shoals, the Water not reaching above their Breasts. All or most of the Stones they brought up, where the Sea appeared red, were of red Coral: In the green Water they found white Coral, covered with green Weeds; and when the Surface seemed white, there was a very white Sand beneath, without any thing else, from whence that Colour might proceed.

Flow named in the East. THE Author, farther to satisfy himself in this Matter, enquired of the most understanding Moorish Pilots, and others, curious in searching for Antiquities, who dwelt in some Places of this Streight [or Gulf] concerning the Name of *Red-Sea*. They seemed greatly to admire at the Question, having never heard of any such Name; and told him they knew of no other than that of the *Sea of Mekka*^a. He likewise asked the Pilots, if they ever saw the Sea stained with the Dust blown from the Shore, and they answered in the Negative. However in all this Don John says, he reproves not the Opinion of the Portuguese before-mentioned, but affirms, that having made the Voyage through this Sea oftener than they, and seen more by one half than they had done, yet he never saw in the whole, what they assert to have seen in the Part^b.

The ninth of August the Fleet sailed into the Harbour of *Anchedina*^c, and stayed there twelve Days.

Return to Goa. THE twenty-first, they embarked in Foists, and proceeding directly to *Goa*, they sailed over the Bar, and put an End to their Voyage.

^a This might be the Case among the Pilots, at that Time but among the Arab Geographers, it is also called the Sea of *Hejaz* and *Yaman* (a Province of *Arabia*) also the Sea of *Kolzum*. See *Goliush, in notis ad Afergani Afron.* p. 144.

^b After all, with Don John's Leave, we cannot think he has found out the Cause of the Name, especially since the *Arabic Gulf*, as observed in Note^c, p. 129, is but a small Bay of the *Red-Sea*: And since the Ancients have left us no satisfactory Account of it, in our Opinion it is in vain to search for the Original of that Appellation. ^c *Anchedina*. ^d *Greaves* has mistaken the Time of his Death, and Length of his Reign, which he makes but three Years. See Mr. *Gagner's* Preface to *Abū'l-feda's* Life of *Mohammed*; and *Schuchsen's* to that of *Sakardin*.

a Table of the Latitudes observed in the foregoing Voyage. Abū'l-feda.

	Degr.	Min.
<i>Sokotra</i> — — — —	12	40
<i>Bāb al Mindub</i> * — — — —	12	15
<i>Sorbo</i> Port — — — —	15	17
<i>Shabak</i> Port, scarce — — — —	19	00
Island — — — —	19	00
<i>Dradate</i> Port — — — —	19	50
<i>Fushaa</i> Bay — — — —	20	15
<i>Farate</i> River — — — —	21	40
<i>Ras al Fidid</i> Port † — — — —	22	00
<i>Komol</i> Port — — — —	22	30
<i>Ras al Anf</i> Cape — — — —	(24	00)
<i>Swarit</i> Island — — — —	24	10
<i>Gadenauhi</i> Port — — — —	24	40
<i>Tuna</i> Port — — — —	25	30
<i>Al Kofsir</i> * — — — —	26	15
<i>Safāny al Bahr</i> Island — — — —	27	00
Isle North-West of <i>Sheduum</i> — — — —	27	40
<i>Al Tūr</i> Town — — — —	28	10
<i>Suez</i> Town — — — —	29	45

Note, a * denotes two Observations being made at the Place, and † several.

CHAP. XX.

A Description of the Sea of *Kolzum*, commonly called the *Arabic Gulf*, or *Red-Sea*: From *Abū'l-feda's* Geography.

Previous Remarks.

THIS Description was written by *Abū'l-feda* Abū'l-feda's Geography.
da Ismael, Prince of *Hamāh*, (the ancient *Epiphania*) in *Syria*. He died in the Year of the *Hejrah*, 733, of *Christ*, 1332, after he had reigned twenty-two Years, and lived sixty-one^d. He was much addicted to the Study of Geography and History, as many of the *Asiatic* Princes have been, and wrote Books on both these Subjects, which are in great Reputation through the East. His Geography written in 721 (or 1321 of our *Era*) consists of Tables of the Latitude and Longitude of Places (in Imitation of *Ptolemy*) with their Descriptions, under the Title of *Takwīm al Boldān*. No fewer than five or six Translations have been made of this Work, but by one Accident or other none of them arrived at the Press. There is nothing of it published but the Tables of *Send* and *Hend* (or *India*) printed in Translations lost.

Abul'feda: Thevenot's French Collection of Voyages; and those of Khwarazm, (or Karazm) *Mawara'nahr*, (or Great Bokharia) and Arabia: The two first published, with a Latin Translation, by Dr. Greaves, in 1650, and all three by Hudson, in the third Volume of, *The Lesser Greek Geographers*, in 1712, from whence we have taken this Description of the Red-Sea: With a View, both to illustrate the two former Journals, and shew, that there is such a Gulf on the Coast of Arabia, as the Antients mention to the End, that Geographers may not be misled by Don John de Castro's Mistake. The Words inserted between Parentheses, are added, in order to accommodate the Names to the English Alphabet, or make the Translation more strictly conformable to the Arabic. As to the Situations, we have thrown them out of the Text, which they embarrass, into a Table: But cannot warrant any of them, in Regard, those which might have been settled by Observation, are not distinguished from those that were not; which is the Fault of the Oriental Tables of Longitude and Latitude in general. The Latitude of *al Kofir*, comes pretty near that found by Don John de Castro: But that of *al Kolzum* must err above one Degree; and that of *Swaken* more than two.

Description of the Sea al Kolzum.

Western Coast. THE Author begins his Description at *al Kolzum*, a small City at the North End of this Sea; which from thence runs Southward, inclining a little to the East, as far as *al Kasir*, (or *al Kofir*) the Port of *Kus*. Hence it continues its Course South, bending somewhat Westward about *Aidab* (*Aydháb*). Afterwards, it passes directly South to *Sawakan* (*Swáken*), a small City of (*al Súdán*, or) the [Land of] the Blacks. Thence proceeding South, it encompasseth the Island *Dablak*, not far from the Western Shore: After which, advancing in the same Direction, it washes the Shores of *Ethiopia*, (*al Habash*) as far as the Cape

(Mountain) *al Mandab*, (or *al Moudub*) at the Mouth of the Red-Sea, (*Bahr al Kolzum*) which here terminates, the Indian Sea, (*Bahr al Hind*) flowing into it.

THE Mountain *al Mandab*, and Deserts of *Aden*, approach very near, being separated only by so narrow a Streight, that two People may see each other across it. These Streights are called *Báb al Mandab*. The Author was informed by some Travellers, that *Báb al Mandab* lies on this Side *Aden*, a Day and Night's Sail towards the North-West. The Mountains of *Almanaub*, are in the Country of the Blacks, and may be seen from the Mountains of *Aden*, at a great Distance. Thus much as to the Western Side of the Sea: Let us now pass over to the Eastern.

THE Coast of the Red-Sea, (*Bahr al Kolzum*) runs Northward from *Aden*; and thence it proceeds round the Coast of *al Yaman*, till it comes to the Borders thereof. Thence it runs North to *Jeddah*: From *Jeddah* it declines a little to the West, as far as *al Jahafah*, a Station of the People of (*Mesr*) *Egypt*. Thence advancing North, and bending a small Matter to the West, it washes the Coast of *Yanbaah* (*Yamboá*). Here it turns off Northwestward; and having passed *Madyan*, comes to *Aylah*. Then it descends Southward to (Mount) *al Túr*, which thrusting forwards, separates two Arms of the Sea: Whence returning to the North, it passes on to *al Kolzum*, (where the Description began) which is situate to the West of *Aylah*, and in almost the same Latitude.

AL KOLZUM, and *Aylah*, are seated on two Arms or Tongues of the Sea; between which the Land interposes, running to the South. Which Land is Mount *al Túr*, almost in the same Longitude with *Aylah*. This latter stands at the End of the Eastern Tongue; and *al Kolzum* at the End of the Western: So that *Aylah* lies more to the East, and *al Túr* more to the South, than *al Kolzum*. *Aylah* is situate on the Front, (farthest Part) of the Promontory which extends

* The Author calls the Sea, elsewhere, the Sea of *Yaman*. And here *Abul'feda*, in his Description of *Egypt*, says, *Pharaoh* was drowned, and, that the Sea took its Name from hence. It is, doubtless, the ancient *Clysma*, as the Agreement of Names, and local Situation imply. It was in the Road of the *Mekka* Pilgrims, but is now destroyed. Dr. Pocock, in his Map, puts *Clysma* about thirteen Minutes more South than *Suez*.

† A Town near the Nile, a little to the South of *Kopt*, the ancient *Koptos*; which shews, *al Kofir* must be the ancient *Berenice*, as hath been observed before, p. 122. Note c. *Aydháb*. In this Name the *dh* is to be pronounced with a Lisp, like the English *th* in *the*, *them*, &c. This Place, in the Time of *al Edrisi*, about the Year 1150, was a famous Port, and carried on a great Trade. Both the King of *Bega*, (or *Baja*, a Part of *Nubia*) and Soltán of *Egypt*, had Officers there to receive the Customs, which were divided between them. Here also was a Ferry to *Jeddah*, the Port of *Mekka*, which lies opposite, the Passage being a Day and Night's Sail, and the Sea full of Shoals and Rocks. See *Geographia Nubiensis*, p. 44, and 45. *Abul'feda*, in his Description of *Egypt*, says, it belonged thereto, and makes it the Port for the Merchants of *Yaman*, and Pilgrims from *Egypt* to *Mekka*.

‡ The Southern Part of *Arabia*, commonly called by Europeans, *Arabia Felix*. § That is one of the Places where the Pilgrims rest in their Journey to *Mekka*.

¶ This seems to contradict what is said about its Situation immediately before, and might induce one to think, *Aylah* and *al Túr*, or *Toro*, were the same; but the Arabic Word here signifies, the inmost Part, or some Place at the End of the Tongue of Sea, not of the Cape.

1545. into the Sea. Between *al Túr* and the Coast of a
De Castro. (Mefr) Egypt, the Sea passes, namely, that
Tongue of the Sea on the outmoſt Part ^a (or
Shore) of which *al Kolzum* ſtands. In like Man-
ner between *al Túr*, and *Hejáz*, the Sea runs;
that is, the Tongue (of Water) on whoſe out-
moſt Part (or Shore) *Aylab* is ſituate.

Peninſula of FROM (Mount) *al Túr*, to either of the oppo-
Túr. ſite Coaſts, the Diſtance is ſmall by Sea; but
longer about by the Deſert of *Fakiyah*. Be-
cauſe thoſe who travel from *al Túr* to Egypt, are un-
der a Neceſſity of going round by *al Kolzum*;
and thoſe who would go from thence to *al Hejáz*,
muſt paſs without *Aylab*. *Al Túr*, on the North,
joins to the Continent; but its other three Sides
are waſhed by the Sea. The Sea of *al Kolzum*,
after paſſing a little towards the South-Eaſt be-
gins to widen on either Side, till at length it be-
comes ſeventy ^b Miles broad. This wider Part is
called *Barkab al Gorandal*.

TABLE of SITUATIONS.

			Lat.	Long.
<i>Kolzum</i>	—	—	28 20	54 15
— by ſome	—	—		56 30
<i>Al Koſſir</i>	—	—	26 00	59 00
<i>Aydháb</i>	—	—	21 00	58 00
<i>Swáken</i>	—	—	17 00	58 00
<i>Dahlak</i>	—	—	14 00	61 00
<i>Aden</i>	—	—	11 00	66 00
Border ^c of <i>Yaman</i>	—	—	19 00	67 00
<i>Joddab</i>	—	—	21 00	66 00
<i>Jahafah</i>	—	—	22 00	65 00
<i>Yamboá</i>	—	—	26 00	64 00
<i>Aylab</i>	—	—	29 00	55 00
—	—	—	28 50	56 40

Note, the Longitude is reckoned from the moſt
Weſtern Shores of the Atlantic Ocean, where are
the Pillars of Hercules; ſuppoſed to be ten De-
grees Eaſt of the Jazáir al Kháladat, or Fortu-
nate Iſlands.

CHAPTER. XXI.

The ſecond Siege of Diu, by Mahmúd King of Kam-
baya, in 1545, under the Government of Don
John de Caſtro.

SECT. I.

Khojah Zaffar's Diſſimulation. He attacks the f
Caſtle of Diu. Builds a Wall between it and
the City. Noble Action of Anaya. King Mah-
múd comes in Perſon to the Siege, and is frighted

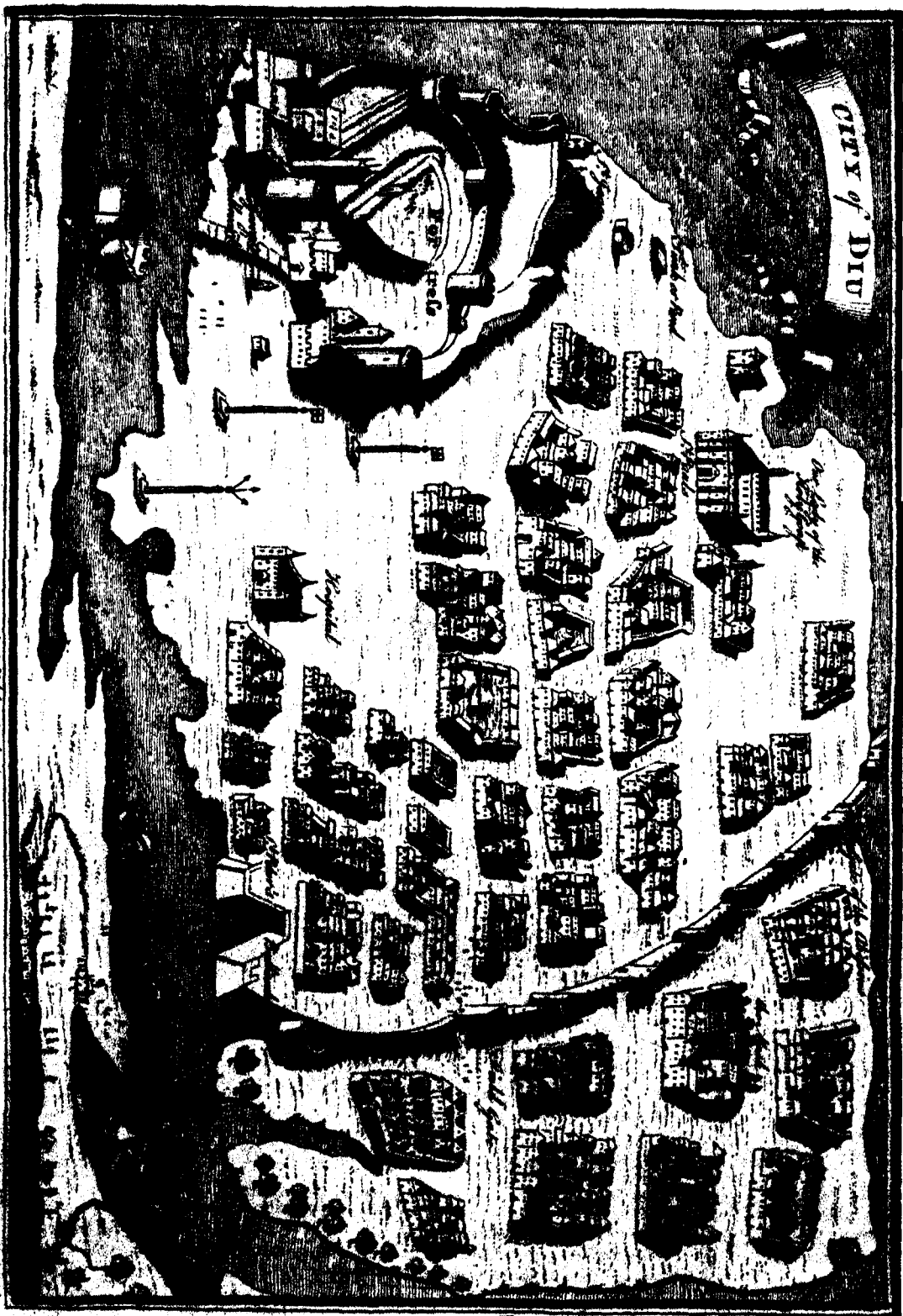
back. Courage of the Women. Zaffar ſlain. 1545.
General Affault. Another General ſlain. A De Caſtro
Baſtion blown up with ſeventy Portugeuze. Se-
veral Affaults. Some ſmall Supplies arrive. A
raſh Sally. A Baſtion taken, and recovered.

THAT the Reader may ſee Don John de
Caſtro, (whoſe Voyage is given above) was
a valiant Soldier, as well as expert Navigator,
we ſhall inſert an Account of the ſecond Siege
of Diu, wherein as many ſurpriſing Actions were
performed by the Portugeuze, as in the former,
and a greater Number of the Enemy ſlain and
taken Priſoners; among whom were the three
chief Generals, which added greatly to the Tri-
umph of the Viſtors.

KHOJAH ZAFFAR, who was ſo active in Zaffar's 1:
the former Siege, from that Time forward, kept ^{n. 11.}
a fair Correſpondence with the Portugeuze: Yet,
underhand, perſuaded the King of Kambaya,
whoſe Favourite he now was, to endeavour ſhak-
ing off the Yoke of the Fort of Diu. To this
effect, he drew together a great Number of Men;
but deſirous rather to ſucceed by Policy, than
Force, he agreed with an infamous Portugeuze,
called Ruy Freyre, to poiſon the Ciſtern, ſiege
the Magazine, and, upon a Sign given, admit him into
the Fort. The Treachery however was diſco-
vered by an Ethiopian, a Turk, and a Woman
Slave. Khojah Zaffar, aſtoniſhed to ſee his De-
ſign detected, began to compliment Don Juan
Maſcarenhas, Commander of the Fort: And be-
cauſe they obſtructed building that Wall between
the Fort and the City, which Don Garcia de No-
ronha had ſo weakly allowed, and Emanuel de
Souſa had courageouſly beat down, he aſſigned that
as the Reaſon for breaking the Peace; making
Uſe of Diſſimulation, till he had gathered a great
Power.

MASCARENHAS, perceiving the Danger He att. 12.
that threatned him, prepared to meet it, and gave ^{the Caſtle.}
Advice thereof to the Governor Don John de
Caſtro, and neighbouring Commanders. He ap-
pointed every Man his Poſt, and placed an Officer
with thirty Men in each of the four Baſtions;
His Lieutenant, over the Gate with twenty, an-
other, with the like Number, in a ſmall Work;
reſerving fifty for himſelf, to be wherever the
greateſt Danger called. This was his whole Force,
and this their Diſpoſition, when Khojah Zaffar
came on with all his Power; reſolving to attack
the Baſtion of the Sea, with three Caſtles, built
upon a Ship of prodigious Bigneſs, well ſtored
with Cannon, to batter the Wall. Within the

^a By this alſo, one might be apt to think, *al Kolzum* ſtood toward the Mouth of the *Bay* or
Bay, almoſt oppoſite to the Town of *al Túr*; but the Arabic ſignifies rather the Shore, or inmoſt Part of the Tongue
or Bay. ^b There are Arabian Miles, of which 56½ go to a Degree; each greater than a Geographical
Mile, and equal to one Mile and a quarter Engliſh of Norwood's Meaſure, 69½ to a Degree.



the wild & rugged

Vol. I. p. 46

1545. Castles were two hundred *Turks*, (out of five hundred, sent from *Mokha* by the King of *Zabid*) who were to distract the Defendants, by pouring in continually all Sorts of Fire-works. But the *Portuguese* Commander, having Notice of this Design, sent *Jacome Leite* to burn that Ship. He took twenty Men in two Vessels, and though unexpectedly discovered, (for he set out by Night) yet did not desist, but courageously went on and set Fire to it; then retiring, saw a great Part of it fly into the Air, with most of the *Turks*, the Remainder casting such a Flame, as at a Distance, discovered the Enemy's Army running in Battalions to quench it. *Jacome*, perceiving them in Clusters, let fly his Cannon, and killed many, having had only seven Men wounded in the Action. After this he went on to the Mouth of the River, and took from the Besiegers some Vessels of Provision, with which he returned to the Fort, much admired of all.

By the the
Wall a
Ship.

KHOJAH ZAFFAR now began to build the Wall, that had been before beat down; and though the Cannon from the Forts killed many of the Workmen, yet it was brought to such Perfection, that he planted thereon sixty great Cannon, besides many small. There was one of such extraordinary Bigness, that it shook the whole Island, and made Pieces of the Fort fly, being managed by an expert *French* Renegado. At this Time arrived *Don Ferdinand de Castro*, Son to the Governor, with some Relief of Men. *Mascarenhas* wanted some Intelligence from the Enemy's Camp, which *Diego de Anaya Coutinho*, a Gentleman of Note, and Man of great Strength, coming to the Knowledge of, at Night put a Helmet on his Head, with a Sword by his Side, and taking a Spear in his Hand, let himself down the Wall. Thus lying close at some Distance from the Fort, he discovered two *Moors*. Who being come up to him, he killed one of them with the Spear, and taking up the other in his Arms, ran with him to the Gate of the Fort, and calling, threw him in, to the great Admiration of those who beheld it. This was much; but what follows is more. He had borrowed the Helmet, and promised, on the Word of a Gentleman, to restore it, or die. In this Scuffle it fell off, and he missed it not till the Owner asked for it. *Coutinho* said nothing, but letting himself off the Wall a second Time, went to look for the Cask, found, and restored it. Nothing could be more brave. Nothing more honourable.

King Mal-
said comes.

MASCARENHAS observing an extraordinary Motion in the Enemy's Army, and being

desirous to know the Cause of it, six *Portuguese* sallied out at Night, and fell among sixty *Moors*, who were all asleep, whereof they killed some; but the Noise waking the rest, as also others not far off, they were forced to retire with the Loss of two. The four brought a Prisoner with them, who informed the Commander, that the King of *Kambaya* was come from *Champanel*, with 10,000 Horse, to see (as *Khojah Zaffar* said) that Place taken. This Action so incensed them, that they renewed the Fury of their Batteries, and did much Harm. However, the Renegado *Frenchman* was struck dead by a chance Dart; and the Gunner, who succeeded him, being ignorant, did more Harm to his own Party, than to the *Portuguese*, which was some Revenge. All the Neighbourhood resounded with the Noise of the Cannon, and Cries of dying Men, when a Bullet from the Fort, falling in the King's Tent, sprinkled him with the Blood of one of his Favourites present, who was beaten to Pieces, which so terrified him, that he instantly fled, leaving the Command of the Horse to *Juzar Khan*, a valiant *Habashian*. The Siege being vigorously pushed, there was great Slaughter and Destruction on both Sides, which was the more visible and prejudicial in the Fort, by Reason of its little Compass, and the small Number of Men. *Mascarenhas* appeared wherever there was Danger, as hoping to gain no less Honour than *Antonio de Silveira* had done there a few Years before. He was no less fortunate in courageous Women, who encouraged the Men, assisted and relieved them at the Work. One of them hearing, that the Enemy were got into a House, ran in with a Spear, and fought till *Mascarenhas* came, and put them all to the Sword.

KHOJAH ZAFFAR omitted nothing that could be devised, to fill the Ditches, and lay open the Fort, nor was less Industry used on the other Side, to repair the Breaches. The prime Gentry did the Duties of private Soldiers and Masons. The Walls and Bastions were ruined at Night, and restored by Morning. *Zaffar*, astonished to see all he destroyed so suddenly made up again, coming on in a Rage with fresh Men, a Cannon Ball took off his Head and Right Hand, whereon he leaned it. His Son *Rumi Khan* succeeded him in his Command; who, (while *Mascarenhas* was sending fresh Advice to the Governor at *Goa*, and the Captains of the neighbouring Places, to hasten Succours) with *Juzar Khan*, gives a general Assault, attacking the Bastions of *St John*, and *St Thomas*, where they found a most vigorous Resistance; and so many were killed, that

* *De Faria*, according to Custom, makes a Judgment of this Accident. Thus (says that Author) he fulfilled his Morality. Who, being at *Otranto*, still persuaded him to be reconciled to the Church; and finding she could not prevail, directed her Letters to him thus. *Khojah Zaffar, my Son, at the Gates of Hell. De Faria* did not consider when he wrote this, that the Church here spoken of was the *Greek*, a schismatical and heretic Church. The Jesuit *Maffei*, aware of this, makes no Reflections of the Kind.

the

1545. the Defendants seemed rather a raging Plague, a De Castro. than Men. Yet, at length, Valour was forced to give Way to Numbers, and the Enemy mounted *St. Thomas's* Bastion: But Despair administering Fury rather than Valour, the few *Portuguese* rush upon the Multitude, and making a wonderful Slaughter, threw headlong from the Wall, such as had escaped the Sword; so that the Dead lay in Heaps.

Juzar Khân slain.

RUMI KHAN, having spent this Night in Prayers, and Processions, in the Morning renewed the Assault: But after mounting the two Bastions, was forced to retire, with the Loss of near two thousand Men, and among them *Juzar Khân*, General of the Horse; whom an Uncle of the same Name succeeded. In this Action seven *Portuguese* were slain. Several other Assaults were given with like Success. In one of these, the Fire was so close and furious, that several who were clad in Cotton, which soon took Flame, ran and dipt themselves in the Water, and so returned to their Posts. Those who wore Skins escaped better. *Mascarenhas* taking Notice of this, caused some gilt Leather, wherewith his Rooms were hung, to be made into Coats for the Soldiers. One Time he and *Don Pedro de Almeyda*, with one hundred Men, sallied to destroy a Mount raised to over-look the Fort, and effected it, killing three hundred *Moors*. *Martin Botello*, another Time, went out with ten Men, to take somebody who might give Intelligence; and falling upon eighteen, put them to Flight, except a bold *Nubi*, (or *Nubian*) who standing all the eleven, wrestled with *Botello*; and he finding it hard to overcome him whilst he could touch the Ground with his Feet, like another *Hercules* bearing *Anteus*, ran with him in his Arms to the Fort.

Bastion broken up.

MEAN while, the Defendants were spent with Labour, and above all with Hunger; so that they were glad to feed upon nauseous Vermin. A Crow, taken upon the dead Bodies, was a Dainty for the Sick, and sold for five Crowns. The Ammunition was likewise almost spent; and now the Enemy gives a hot Assault with fresh Men, ten thousand having newly joined them. They entered *St. John's* Bastion, and retired. Scarce had they left it, when it blew up, undermined, and in it seventy *Portuguese*, ten whereof came down alive. *Diego de Sotomayer* fell into the Fort with a Spear in his Hand; a Soldier in the same Manner dropped among the Enemies, and was killed by them. *Mascarenhas*, foreseeing the Danger, had ordered them to quit the Bastion; but one *Reynoso* professed, he would accuse them of Cowardice, if they did.

The Breach attacked.

THIRTEEN thousand of the Enemy having attacked the Breach they had made, were withstood by five Soldiers only, till *Mascarenhas* came

with fifteen more. The Women assisted the Men, and ran even to brave Death. The Priest, who was returned from carrying the Advice to the neighbouring Places, appeared, encouraging all with a Crucifix lifted on high. The Action done here were incredible: But it growing dark, the Enemy retired, having lost three hundred Men: And *Mascarenhas* spent all the Night in repairing the Damages.

THE Enemy daily renewed their Attacks with no better Fortune, and held out by Means of their vast Numbers. *Rumi Khân* fell again to mining, and pierced the very Rocks that stood in his Way; but met not with such Success as he had done the Time before: For *Mascarenhas*, perceiving his Work, countermined it, and killed many of his Men. *Don Alvaro de Castro*, the Governor's Son, sent with Supplies, having met with almost incredible Storms, at length arrived at *Basaim*: *Antonio Moniz Barreto* got first into *Diu* with eight Gentlemen, who, though so few, were no small Comfort to the Belieged. One of these, called *Michael Darnide*, a Man of prodigious Strength, being refused Admittance into the Boat, leaped into the Water with his Musket in his Mouth, and swimming after it, *Barreto* was obliged to take him up.

NEXT, came *Luis de Melo*, and *Mendoza*, with nine Men, then *Don George*, and *Don Duarte de Menezes*, with seventeen, after them, *Don Antonio de Atayde*, and *Francisco Guillerme*, with fifty each; and lastly, *Ruy Freyre*, Factor of *Chaul*, with twenty-four. All together fell upon the Enemy, then possessed of some of the Works, and among them, the Bastion of *Sant Yago*. The Dispute was hot; yet the Enemy set up their Colours on the Walls. *Antonio Moniz Barreto* made good his Post with only two Soldiers, and was going to quench his Flames in the Water; but one of the two, who was in the same Condition, detained him, and both did Things worthy Admiration. *Antonio Correa* sallied out with twenty more, to discover the Enemy, and saw twelve *Moors* sitting about a Fire. He exhorted his Men to fall upon them, but they instead of following him, fled. However, going forward, in Hopes to take one who might give Intelligence, he fell on, and behaved himself bravely; yet was taken, and carried to *Rumi Khân*, who examined him about the Posture the Fort was in, which being then very miserable, he represented so powerful, as drove that General into Despair; and moved him to cause the unfortunate Prisoner to be dragged thro' the Streets: Then his Head being cut off, it was set upon a Pole next Day in Sight of the Fort.

THE Enemy had, by this Time, lost five thousand Men; the Belieged two hundred, so that they had not so many more left: And what was worse, half of them were unable to do Duty, when

1545. when Don *Alvaro* arrives with the Supplies, which a
 De Castro. consisted of four hundred Men, and a sufficient
 Quantity of Ammunition; having by the Way
 taken a Ship of *Kambaya* richly laden. The Joy
 of this Relief was soon allayed; for the Soldiers
 of this Reinforcement, fearing the Mines, pro-
 posed to meet the Enemy in open Field. *Mas-*
carenhas prudently refusing to comply with their
 Motion, they broke out into open Mutiny, in Con-
 tempt of all Military Discipline; scarce known,
 or at least not regarded by the *Portuguese* Na-
 tion. The Commander seeing himself in Danger
 of perishing in the Fort by his own Men, sallied
 with almost five hundred in three Bodies. Pre-
 sently they gained the Enemy's advanced Post,
 forcing them to retire to their Works. But when
 they came there, those who had so insolently
 forced their Commander to this Extravagancy,
 stood heartless at the Foot of the Trenches;
 while others mounted who had been less forward
 with their Tongues. *Mascarenhas* seeing them
 in this Posture, upbraided their Behaviour in such
 piquant Terms, that roused by Shame, they took
 Heart and went up. The whole Army now came
 down upon the *Portuguese*, who having done
 Wonders, were forced to retire in such Disorder;
 that the Enemy must infallibly have possessed
 themselves of the Fort, had not *Mascarenhas*, with
 his Prudence and Courage, prevented *Mojate*
Khân; who with five thousand attempted to enter,
 and was valiantly opposed by *Luis de Sousa* in *St.*
Thomas's Bulwark. Threescore Men were lost in
 this Action; and Don *Fernando de Castro* mortal-
 ly wounded in the Head.

A Bastion
 recovered.

THE *Moors* had taken the Cannon of the Bas-
 tion *Santiago*, when *Vasco de Cunna*, and *Luis de*
Almeida brought a fresh Relief. The latter im-
 mediately went out with three Caravels, and
 quickly returned with two great Ships of *Mekka*,
 and some other Vessels, whose Loading was worth
 fifty thousand Ducats. At the Yard-Arms hung
 many *Moors*, whose Heads were then cut off; as
 was the Captain's, who was a Janizary, and
 offered three thousand Ducats for his Ransom.

SECT. II.

Preparations made at Goa. Don John de Castro
sets out and arrives at Diu. Attacks the Enem-
my's Works, and takes them. Attacks their Army,
and totally defeats it. Enters the City, and
makes great Slaughter. Rûmi Khân, Zaffar's
Son, rallies, is defeated and killed. Juzar Khân
taken Prisoner, and two more Generals slain.
Towns destroyed on the Coast. Don John sends
to borrow Money on his Whiskers. Repairs the
Castle. Returns to Goa, and enters it in Tri-

umph. Is rewarded by the King with unusual
Honours, but dies without enjoying them.

1545.
 De Castro.

THE Siege had now lasted eight Months; when in the Beginning of November, the Governor Don *John de Castro*, had gotten together a great Fleet of all Sorts of Vessels for the Relief of *Diu*. All *Goa* admired the Constancy wherewith he received the News of the Death of his Son Don *Fernando*. For though he highly resented it, he dissembled his Grief, and dressing himself gayer than ordinary, went first in Procession, to give God Thanks, that *Diu* was still in the Possession of the *Portuguese*, and then to a publick Feast, which is the Imitation of a Fight, wherein they use Canes instead of Lances. The Fleet consisted of above ninety Sail, besides three of the Ships that then came from *Portugal*, and several Gentlemen that came in them, went in other Vessels.

THE Governor being come to *Basaim*, waited the coming up of the Vessels that were scattered; and the mean while, sent Don *Emanuel de Lima* to scour the Coast. Near *Daman*, he took several Ships, and cutting the *Moors* in Pieces, threw them into the Mouth of the Rivers, that the Tide carrying them up, they might strike a Terror in all that Coast. Entering the River of *Surât*, after a vigorous Resistance made, he destroyed all that belonged to the Town of the *Ethiopians*. The same was done at the City *Anfote*, not far distant, without sparing Beauty: The finest Women of the *Bramens* and *Baneans* being slaughtered in that and other neighbouring Towns.

THE Fleet appearing in the Sea of *Diu*, the Enemy stood amazed, though they had just then received a Supply of five thousand fresh Men, sent by the King. The Governor went privately into the Fort, and afterwards landed his Men. It having been resolved in Council to attack the Enemy, they marched in this Order. Don *Juan Mascarenhas*, Commander of the Fort, led the Van, consisting of five hundred Men. Don *Alvaro* led as many: Don *Emanuel de Lima*, the like Number: The Governor headed the rest, which were one thousand, and a Body of *Indians*. Among the Men, were some *Portuguese* Women in Man's Cloaths, to assist the Wounded. In the Fort was left the Lieutenant with three hundred Men. The Governor appointed Rewards for those who first mounted the Enemy's Works.

AT Break of Day, on the eleventh of November, this small Army marched out to attack the numerous Forces of the Enemy, who were well entrenched, and provided with Cannon. They gave the Onset with much Bravery, and some fell. Two Gentlemen, who had challenged each

These must be the People of *Habash*, or *Abassins*.

other,

1545. other, now agreed he should be owned victorious a De Castro. over the other, who first entered the Enemy's Quarters. Both honourably strove for this Glory, and both died gloriously in the Attempt. At length the *Portuguese* mounted the Works. Such was each Man's Eagerness to be the first, that it could not be known who really was so. *Cosme Payva* having lost a Leg, fought on his Knees, till he was killed. The *Tanadar* cut down one *Turk*, and flopping down to make an End of him, was slain by another. *Francisco de Azevedo* was killed, after having made a great Slaughter.

Takes their Works.

THE brave *Mascarenhas*, and Don *Alvaro de Castro*, having taken a Bulwark, make themselves Room in the Field. The Governor comes up and inflames the Fight. He orders his Ensign to fix the Colours on the Enemy's Works. Twice was the Ensign thrown down, and twice he remounted. The Men encouraged by the Governor's Presence, press forward, and the Enemy gives Way. The *Portuguese* enter their Works pell-mell with them, and *Rumi Khán* comes on with the whole Body of his Army. But after a hot Dispute, retires, leaving his Adversaries Masters of his Works.

Defeats the Army.

HE goes to join *Juzar Khán*, who on the other Side was worsted by *Mascarenhas*. The Governor marches out of the Works to meet them, giving the Van to his Son Don *Alvaro*. The *Portuguese* were much distressed, when Friar *Antonio del Cazal* put himself before them, with a Crucifix on the Point of a Lance; on which, they took Courage, and covering the Field with dead and wounded Men, put *Rumi Khán* to Flight. He rallying again in his Turn, forced the *Portuguese* to retire in great Confusion: But the Governor exposing himself to Admiration, renewed the Fight, and restored good Order. At this Time a Stone broke an Arm of the Crucifix; and the Priest calling to the Men to revenge the Sacrilege, they fell on with such Fury, that having done incredible Execution, they drove the Enemy to the City, who still gave Way, facing the *Portuguese*. The first who entered the City with them, was Don *Mascarenhas*, then Don *Alvaro*, and Don *Emanuel de Lima*, and the Governor, all several Ways, making the Streets and Houses run with Blood. The Women escaped not the Fate of the Men; and Children were slain at their Mothers Breasts. The first Part of the Booty was Precious Stones, Pearls, Gold and Silver: Other Things, though of Value, were slighted as cumbersome.

And enters the City.

RUMI KHAN, and his General Officers, rally their Men, and appear again in the Field with eight thousand. The Governor and his Son, and Don *John Mascarenhas* encompass them. The Fight was bloody. In the Heat of it *Gabriel Teyzeira*, took the Standard of *Kambaya* (after killing the Bearer) and dragged it about the Field, proclaiming Victory. *George Nunz*, from among the Dead, brought out *Rumi Khán's* Head, and presented it to the Governor. Others took *Juzar Khán*, who was wounded. The *Portuguese* were left absolute Masters of the Field, having left one hundred Men, others say, only thirty-four. Of the Enemy five thousand were slain, and among them *Azede Khán*, *Lu Khán*, and other Men of Note. Free Plunder was allowed: Some were enriched; many got much, and all were satisfied. There were taken many Colours, forty Pieces of Cannon of an extraordinary Bigness, which with the lesser Sort made up two hundred, and a vast Quantity of Ammunition.

1546.

De Castro.

Rumi Khan killed.

Juzar Khan taken.

And much Plunder.

MANY particularly signalized themselves in this Action: The Governor played the Part of a Soldier, as well as a General; Don *Juan Mascarenhas*, after a Siege of eight Months, did more than could be imagined; Don *Alvaro de Castro*, of whom it is enough to say, he behaved like his Father, the Ensign *Duarte Barbudo*, who being several Times thrown down, as often mounted the Works. Nor must Friar *Antony* be forgotten, who employed his Crucifix to such good Purpose. Besides many more, as well of those who were killed, as they that survived. The King in a Rage for this Loss, caused twenty-eight *Portuguese* he had in Custody, to be torn to Pieces in his Presence.

WHILST the Governor was employed in repairing the Damage received, Don *Emanuel de Lima*, in the Beginning of the Year 1546, by his Order, scoured the Coast of *Kambaya* with thirty Ships, demolishing all the Towns along the Shore. The City *Gogo*, one of the chief of that Kingdom, was taken, plundered, and burnt, without any Resistance; the Inhabitants flying to the Mountains, where being pursued, they were found at Night, about a League off asleep, and all put to the Sword. All the Cattle in the Fields, were either killed or Ham-strung. The City *Gandar*, and several other Towns, underwent the same Fate; with many Ships along the Coast of *Barroche*.

Towns destroyed.

GREAT was the Joy at *Goa*, for the News of what had happened at *Diu*, carried thither by *Whiskers pawned*.

* It is *Pity de Faria*, after bestowing such Praises on his Countrymen, should, at one Stroke, rob them of all their Glory, by telling us, the Enemy confessed, that one Day, during the Siege, they saw over the Church of the Fort, a beautiful Woman clothed in White, from whom proceeded such Rays that, and this Day in the Field, some Men with Lances, who did them the greatest Harm. For our Parts, we will not believe an Enemy's Evidence so injurious to the Reputation of the *Portuguese*: For why might they not have performed Wonders without such Help this Siege, as well as the former?

1546. *Diego Rodriguez de Azevedo*, by whom the Governor desired the City to lend him twenty thousand *Pardao's* for the Use of the Army; sending a Lock of his Whiskers in Pawn for the Money. The City returned the Pledge with Respect, and remitted him more Money than he demanded. The Women, to express their Gratitude, sent their Pendants, Necklaces, Bracelets, and other Jewels: But all was punctually restored by the Governor, as it was sent; having been supplied the Day before, by a rich Ship of *Kambaya*, taken by *Antonio Moniz Barreto*, on the Coast of *Mangalar*.

Castle repaired.

THE Fort was repaired, and put into a better Condition than it was before the Siege: Five hundred Men were left in it; and *Don George de Meneses*, with six Ships upon the Coast. The City likewise became better inhabited, through the good Usage of the Governor to the *Moors*. After which, sailing for *Goa*, he arrived there the eleventh of *April*, where he was received with loud Acclamations; and a splendid Triumph prepared by the City, in Imitation of those of *Rome*. The Gates and Streets were hung with Silk; the Windows thronged with fine Women: All Places resounded with Musick and Noise of Cannon; and the Sea was covered with Vessels richly adorned. The Governor entered under a rich Canopy,

De Castro's Triumph.

where taking off his Cap, they put on his Head a Crown of Laurel, and a Branch of it in his Hand. Before him went *Friar Antony* with his Crucifix, as he carried it in the Fight; and next to him, the Royal Standard. Then followed *Jusar Khan*, with his Eyes fixed on the Ground; perhaps, that he might not see his Prince's Colours dragged, and ours flying, besides the mortifying Sight of six hundred Prisoners in Chains. In the Front, the Cannon, and other Sorts of Arms were carried in Carts, very delightful to behold. The Governor walked upon Leaves of Gold and Silver, and rich Silks. The Ladies from the Windows, sprinkled him with sweet Water, and threw Flowers on him. *Queen Catharine of Portugal*, hearing the Relation of his Victory and Triumph, said, *Don John had overcome like a Christian, and triumphed like a Heathen*.

1546. De Castro.

THE News of the Victory at *Diu* was brought to *Lisbon* the same Year; when the King having resolved to honour *Don John de Castro* with unusual Favours, continued the Government to him with the Title of Vice-Roy. He sent him also a Present in Money; and made his Son *Don Alvaro*, Admiral of the *Indian Seas*. But *Don John* did not live to enjoy that Honour *.

* He was almost dead, says *de Faria*, when those Bounties reached him; and died of a Disease, that now a days, kills no Man, [he means in *Portugal*] though it did formerly, for even Diseases die. It was Grief for the miserable Estate *India* was reduced to, and the bad Conduct of some Gentlemen in an Expedition a little before, which brought him untimely to his Grave. He publicly begged Pardon of many for writing against them to the King, that it may appear even great Spirits purchase Favour by mean Whispers. When he saw there was no Hopes of Life, he sent for the Council, which he had appointed to act in his Stead, and told them, *That he had nothing; and desired, that they would order something out of the King's Revenue, that he might not die for Want*. Then a Mass Book being brought, he laid his Hand upon it, and swore, that *He had no Way made use of the King's, or any other Man's Money; nor had driven any Trade to increase his own Stock*. And desired, that this Act of his might be recorded. After his Death, there was found in his private Cabinet, a bloody Discipline; and three Royals, which was all his Treasure. In 1576, his Body was brought to *Portugal*; and laid in the Church of *Benfica*, belonging to the *Dominicans*, on a Hill not far from *Lisbon*. He is painted crowned with Palm Branches, and clothed in Red. He was a great Linguist, and well skilled in Mathematics. He governed without Pride, and valued Men according to their Merit. He so much loved that every body should look like what he was, that seeing a fine Suit of Cloaths as he passed by a Taylor's, and being told it was his Son's, he cut it in Pieces, saying, *Bid that young Man provide Arms*. He was the fourteenth in the Number of Governors; and may be accounted the fourth Vice-Roy.

B O O K II.

*The First VOYAGES of the ENGLISH to GUINEA,
and the EAST INDIES.*

The INTRODUCTION.

Early At-
tempts

ALTHOUGH the *Portuguese* were the first *Europeans* who set on Foot Discoveries, and had carried them on for many Years before any other Nation, yet as soon as those Voyages appeared to be attended with Gain, the *English* were ready to put in for a Share. About 1471, the *Portuguese* discovered *Guinea*; and ten Years after, we find the *English* making Preparations for a Visit to those Parts ^a.

Of the Eng-
lish.

IN the Year 1481, *John Tintam*, and *William Fabian*, were busy fitting out a Fleet of Ships for the Coast of *Guinea*. Whether for their own Benefit, in Whole or Part; or solely on the Account of the Duke of *Medina Sidonia* in *Spain*, by whose Command, it is said to have been done, we cannot determine. Possibly the *Spaniards*, being excluded by the Grants of Popes, in Favour of the *Portuguese*, from trading to the *East Indies*, endeavoured to elude them, by employing *Englishmen* in that Navigation. However it was, King *John II.* of *Portugal*, sensibly alarmed at the News of the said Preparations, sent two Persons in Embassy to our *Edward*, in order to renew the ancient Leagues with *England*; and (what seems to have been the chief End of their Commission) move him to hinder the said Fleet from putting to Sea. They had, in short, Orders to acquaint the King with the Title which *John* had to *Guinea*, to the Intent, that *Edward* should prohibit his Subjects throughout his Dominions, from sending any Ships to that Country: Which was accordingly done, and thus the Voyage was frustrated.

Why not
perjured.

THIS is an authentic Testimony of the early Attempts of the *English*, which is delivered by *Garcia de Resende*, in his Book of, *The Life and Actions of John II.* Chap. 33 ^b: And to the same, or some other like Cause, it may possibly be owing, that the *English* desisted so long from sailing to the Southward, and turned their Thoughts to

a the Discovery of a Passage to the *Indies* some other Way.

HOWEVER, it appears by a *Memorandum*, or *Trade to* Letter of *Nicholas Thorne*, senior, a considerable Merchant of *Bristol*, whereof *Hakluyt* ^c gives the Contents, that in 1526, (and by Circumstances, for a long Time before) certain *English* Merchants, and among the rest Mr. *Thorne* himself, with one *Thomas Spacheford*, traded frequently to the *Canary Islands*. For by the said Letter, Notice was given to *Thomas Midnal*, his Factor, and *William Ballard*, his own Servant, residing at *St. Lucar*, in *Andalusia*, that the *Christopher* of *Cadiz*, bound for the *West Indies*, had taken on board several Packs of Cloth, of different Fineness and Colours, with Packthread, Soap, and other Goods, to be landed at *Santa Cruz*, in *Tenerifa*. These Commodities they were to sell, or barter at that Port, where they were to remain as Factors; and send back in Return, Store of *Orchel* ^d, Sugar, and Kid Skins.

At length, about the Middle of the sixteenth ^{To Barbary.} Century, the *English* Spirit for Trade, exerting itself, and meeting with a favourable Conjunction, they began to push it to the South as well as North. About the Year 1551, Captain *Thomas Windham*, in the Ship *Lion*, sailed to *Marokko*, whither he carried back two *Moors* of the Royal Family. This was the first Voyage we meet with to the Western Coast of *Africa*; and these are all the Particulars to be found relating to it, excepting, that one *James Alday*, a Servant to *Sebastian Cabota*, in a Letter to Mr. *Michael Locke*, inserted in *Hakluyt's* Collection ^e, represents himself as having been the first Promoter of this *Barbary* Traffick: He also observes, that he should have performed this Voyage himself, and have had the sole Command of Ship and Goods, but that Sir *John Lutterel*, *John Fletcher*, *Henry Ostrich*, and others, with whom he had joined, died of the

^a The *French* alledge, that they drove a great Trade with *Guinea*, from 1364, till 1413; which was one hundred and seven Years before the *Portuguese* discovered it.

part. 2. p. 2

^b Cited at length by *Hakluyt*, Vol. 2.

^c See the same Part, p. 3.

^d A kind of Moss growing on high Rocks, in those Days, much used in Dying

^e In the Place above, p. 7.

Sweating Sickness; and he himself, after escaping a that Disease, had been seized with a violent Fever. But before he recovered, the Ship being at Portsmouth, Thomas Windham had her away from thence, by whom he lost eighty Pounds.

NEXT Year, 1552, Windham performed a second Voyage to Zafin or Saffi, and Santa Cruz, without the Streights, where he had been the Year before. This gave great Offence to the Portuguese, who threatened to treat the English as Enemies, if they met with them in those Parts.

To Guinea
by Sea

NOTWITHSTANDING those Menaces, the Year following, the same Windham, and Antonio Anes Pintado, the Promoter of this Attempt, undertook a Voyage to Guinea, in three Ships, with a hundred and forty Men, and traded for Gold along the Coast; after which they sailed for Benin to load Pepper: But both the Commanders, and most of the Men dying of Sickness, occasioned by the Climate; the rest, being but forty, returned to Plymouth with only one Ship, (having burnt the other for Want of Hands to sail her) and no great Riches.

African
Companies.

IN 1554, Mr. John Lok made a Voyage for Guinea with three Ships; and trading along that Coast, brought away a considerable Quantity of Gold and Ivory: But proceeded no farther. These Voyages were succeeded by others, almost every Year. At length, upon Application to Queen Elizabeth by certain Merchants, two Patents were granted. One in 1585, for the Barbary, or Marokko Trade: The other, in 1588, for the Guinea Trade, between the Rivers Senaga, and Ganbra, or Gambia*: And in 1592, a third was obtained by others, taking in the Coast from the River Nonnia, to the South of Sierra Leona, the Space of one hundred Leagues^b, which Patents gave Rise to the African Company. They had Bickerings with the Portuguese in all these Voyages to the Coast of Africa; several of which have been preserved by Hakluyt, and will be inserted in this Book, as Forerunners to those to the East Indies.

East India
Voyages.

THE Views of the English extending with their Success, and finding the Discovery of the North-East, and North-West Passages had been long attempted in vain, they resolved to push their Voyages round Africa, by the Portuguese Course. In 1591, three large Ships undertook that Voyage for the first Time, under the Command of Captain Raymond: And in 1596, another Fleet of three Ships, commanded by Captain Wood, set out on the same Design; but with ill Success.

Mean Time, several Navigators were employed, to discover this Way to the East Indies, and the Portuguese Possessions there. At length, in 1600, a Body of Merchants, Gentlemen, and others, (to the Number of two hundred and sixteen) with George, Earl of Cumberland, at the Head of them, obtained a Charter from Queen Elizabeth, for carrying on a Trade to the East Indies, under the Denomination of, *The Company of Merchant Adventurers*. From this Time forwards, Ships were sent regularly, every two or three Years, to those Parts of the World. And thus was laid the Foundation of the East India Commerce, which subsists at present.

LONG before the English sailed to India, by the Cape of good Hope, in their own Ships, several Merchants, and others, from Time to Time, had passed to India in the Ships of the Portuguese, as well as over Land, out of a Desire to pry into, and share the Benefit of, that gainful Commerce. Of those who went by Land, several Relations and Letters remain, whereof Extracts will be inserted among the Travels. But of all those who might have performed the Voyage, as Passengers in the Portuguese Vessels, we meet with only one, viz. Thomas Stephens, who hath written any Account of his Adventures, or at least, whose Memoirs have been published. To this may be added as a second, Captain Davis's Account of the Voyage of the Middleburgh Merchants in 1598, wherein he served as Pilot; in order to discover a Way to India, and the Posture of the Portuguese Affairs. Both these Journals contain very useful Remarks for the Time, and therefore claim a Place in our Collection.

ALTHOUGH the first Voyages of the English to the East Indies are full of Variety, yet the Reader is not to expect such a continued Series of new Discoveries, great Actions, Battles, Sieges, and Conquests, as are to be met with in the History of the Portuguese Expeditions. For it must be considered, that we made few or no Discoveries, but what had been made before, that our Voyages were, for the most Part, strictly Commercial; that our Settlements were generally made by the Consent of the Natives; that we made no Conquests; and that the Undertaking was set on Foot, and carried on solely by our Merchants.

THIS last may be a Reason why there is no regular History extant of the English Voyages, Discoveries, and Transactions in the Indies, as we find there are many of the Portuguese and Spanish.

* These Patents are to be found in Hakluyt's Collection. The first was granted for twelve Years, to the Earls of Warwick, Leicester, and certain Merchants of London, to the Number of thirty-two in all: The second for ten Years, to eight Persons of Exeter, London, and other Places. By this last Patent it appears, that the Portuguese residing in London, advised it; and that one Voyage had been made before the Grant. See Hakluyt, vol. 2. part. 2. p. 114, and 123.

^b There is a brief Note of this in the same Author, p. 193.

1552 However, it may be presumed, that as the *East India Company* have kept regular Journals of their Affairs; and are furnished with Letters, and other Memoirs of their Agents, a satisfactory Account thereof might thence be collected, should they order it to be drawn up. In the mean Time, the Publick must be content with what is to be met with relating thereto, in the several Voyages that have been published from Time to Time, by Particulars; we mean chiefly as to the Progress of the Company: For as to its Rise, and early Transactions in the *East Indies*, a pretty good Account may be gathered from the first Voyages set out by that Society; a complete Series of which we shall lay before the Reader, extracted chiefly from the Collection of *Purchas*, who was favoured with the Use of the Company's Books.

1552.
Windham.

C H A P. I

*The second * Voyage to Barbary in the Year 1552, by Captain Thomas Windham: Written by Mr. James Thomas, the Captain's Page.*

THIS Voyage was set forth by Sir John York, Sir William Geirard, Sir Thomas Wash, Messieurs Francis Lambert, Cole, and several other Merchants. The Ships that went on this Voyage were three. First, the *Lion*, of London, the Admiral, about one hundred and fifty Tons; Thomas Windham Captain, and Part Owner, a Norfolk Gentleman, dwelling at *Marshfield Park*, *Somersetshire*: Second, the *Buttolfe*, about fourscore Tons; and the third a Caravel, bought of certain Portuguese in *Newport* in *Wales*, and freighted for this Voyage, of some sixty Tons. The Number of Men in the Fleet, were an hundred and twenty. The Master of the *Lion* was one John Kerry, of *Mynbed*, in *Somersetshire*, and his Mate David Landman. This Fleet departed out of *King-road*, near *Bristol*, on Monday Morning, the Beginning of May 1552; and Monday Fortnight in the Evening, came to Anchor in the Road of *Zafia*, or *Asafi*, on the Coast of *Barbary*, in thirty-two Degrees of Latitude, which was the first Port they were bound to; and there landed Part of their Merchandize, to be conveyed to the City of *Marokko*.

AFTER this, having refreshed themselves with Victuals and Water, they went to the second Port, called *Santa Cruz*, where they discharged the rest of their Goods; being Linen, and Woollen Cloth, Coral, Amber, Jet, and divers other Things, esteemed by the *Moors*. Here they found a French Ship, which not knowing whether War or Peace subsisted between *England* and *France*, drew herself as near the Town as she could, craving its Protection, if Need were; insomuch, that observing the *English* to advance, a Piece was shot from the Walls, which flew between the Main and Foremast of the Admiral. Whereupon casting Anchor, there presently came a Pinnace aboard to know what they were; who, understanding, that they had been there the Year before, and came with Consent of their King, were fully satisfied, and gave them Leave to land their Goods. They had not been long here, before the Vice-Roy, whose Name was *Sibill Manache*, came to visit them, with great Courtesy. But by one Delay or other, they spent very near three Months before they could get in their Lading; which was Sugar, Dates, Almonds, and Malassos, or Sugar Syrup. Yet although they were here in the Heat of the Summer, none of the Company died by Sicknes.

THE Ships being laden, they drew into the Sea for a Western Wind: But as they were setting forward for *England*, the *Lion* sprung a Leak, so that they were driven to *Lancerota*, on the Side towards *Forteventura*; where they landed out of her seventy Chests of Sugar, with twelve or sixteen of the Company. The Inhabitants supposing the Caravel had been seized by them, suddenly came with Force, and took them Prisoners, (among whom, the Author was one) and spoiled the Sugars. This being perceived from the Ships, they manned out three Boats, to rescue them, and put the *Spaniards* to Flight; whereof they slew eighteen, and took the Governor of the Island Prisoner, who was about seventy Years of Age: But chasing the Enemy too far, and being in Want of Powder and Arrows, the *Spaniards*, who perceived this, returned and slew six of them in their Retreat. After this, coming to a Parle, it was agreed, that the *English* should be exchanged for their old Governor; and that a Certificate should be given under his, and their Hands, of what Damages they had received: Which Damages were made good by the *Spanish* Merchants, upon their Return into *England*.

HAVING found out and stopped the Leak, they set Sail; and as they left one End of the Island, the *Cacafuego*, and other Ships of the King of *Portugal's* Armada, entered at the other, and came to Anchor in the Road from whence the

There remains no Account of the first Voyage, farther than what is mentioned in the Introduction to this Book, 138.

English

1553. *English* departed, shooting off their Ordnance in a Parts, they would use them as their mortal Enemies. They were seven or eight Weeks before they could reach the Coast of *England*, putting first into *Plymouth*: Soon after they arrived at *London*, where they landed their Merchandize, about the End of *October*, 1552.

C H A P. II.

A Voyage to Guinea and Benin, in 1553, by Thomas Windham, and Antonio Anes Pinteado, Captains.

PREVIOUS REMARKS.

Eden THIS and the following Voyage of *Africa* was first published by *Richard Eden* in a small Collection; which was afterwards reprinted with several Improvements in 4^{to}, by *Richard Willes*, in 1577^b. *Hakluyt* has inserted both these in his Collection with *Eden's* Preamble, as if it was his own; only he ascribes the Account of *Africa* to the right Owner^c.

EDEN tells us, in his Preamble, that he was prevailed on, by certain Friends, to make some Mention of these Voyages (performed at the Charges of certain Merchant Adventurers of the City of *London*) that the Memory of them might be preserved: In regard they are the first ever performed by *Englishmen*; and those Parts came to be more and more frequented. He farther observes, that this new Trade might turn out to the great Advantage of our Merchants, in case it was not prevented by the Ambition of such, who, on account of conquering forty or fifty Miles here and there, and erecting certain Fortresses, or rather Block-houses, among naked People, think themselves worthy to be Lords of half the World; envying that others should enjoy the Commodities which they themselves cannot wholly possess. And although he allows, that such as have been at Charges in discovering and conquering (conquering or acquiring) such Lands, might be entitled to certain Privileges, Powers, and Advantages; yet it seemed to him somewhat rigorous, unjust, and unreasonable, that those who by Violence seize the Dominions of others, should deny to any the Liberty of Trade in Places never or but seldom frequented by them, and at a great Distance from their own Marts. These Reflections, which seem to be levelled against the *Portuguese*, may also be applied to monopolizing Companies.

Mr. Eden received his Materials from Persons of Credit, who had made it their Business to pick them up. But omits to speak of many Particulars, not very necessary to be known; yet says, they shall be set forth more fully in the second Voyage, together with the exact Course of the Navigation. In case any should think some Persons too sharply reflected on, he gives them to understand, that Truth ought to take Place, for the Encouragement of honest Men, and Confusion of Villains. After this follows a brief Description of *Africa*.

WE shall, for our Part, only add, that if such a Number of mere nautical Remarks, appear irksome to some, it must be considered, that Mariners will find their Use in them, and that Geography and Navigation, at this Day, are often beholden to these early Journals.

THE JOURNAL.

THE twelfth of *August*, 1553, there sailed from *Portsmouth* two goodly Ships, the *Primoze* and *Lion*, with a Pinnace called the *Moon*; furnished with 140 able-bodied Men, Ordnance and Victuals. They were commanded by two Captains, the one a *Portuguese*, called *Antonio Anes Pinteado*, the Son of *Juan Anes*, born in a Town named, *The Port of Portugal*^d, a wise, discreet and sober Man. He was an expert Pilot, as well as prudent Captain; and for his Skill in Navigation had been in great Favour with the King of *Portugal*. Who committed to his Care the Coasts of *Brazill* and *Guinea*, against the Insults of the *French*, to whom he was a Terror, in those Seas. He was likewise a Gentleman of the King's Household: But falling afterwards into Disgrace, thro'

^a In this, as for the most Part in all the ancient Voyages, they are called *Portugals*: of Travayle in the *West and East-Indies*, &c. by *Eden* and *Willes*, 4^{to}, p. 336.

^b See the Hist
^c See *Hakluyt*, Vol. 2

^d O Porto, or Port o Port

1553. the malicious Informations of some who envied a
 his good Fortune, was forced, by Necessity, to
 come to *England*. The other Captain's Name
 was *Windham*^a, a Person of very different Qua-
 lities, and endowed with few or no Virtues at
 all. He began to shew his evil Disposition at
Portsmouth, by turning out of his Ship a Kin-
 sman of one of the principal Merchants, con-
 cerned in the Voyages; although it proved very
 happy for the young Man, and others wished he
 had served their Sons in the same Manner.

Windham and Pinteado

SETTING out on their Voyage, they came
 to the Island of *Madera*, where they took in
 Wines for the Use of their Ships. At these
 Islands they met with a great Galleon of the
 King of *Portugal's*, full of Men and Ordnance,
 sent out on purpose to prevent Ships of other
 Nations from trading in those Seas; and parti-
 cularly to frustrate this Voyage of the *English*, al-
 though they could not have done it, in case they
 had attempted it. It seems the King of *Portu-
 gal* had been secretly informed, that our Ships
 were designed against his Castle of *Mina*, altho'
 nothing less was intended.

Windham's Injury.

HITHERTO *Windham* behaved in a seemingly
 very good-natured friendly Manner to *Pinteado*;
 but after they had left *Madera*, he began to change
 his Carriage. He took upon him the sole Com-
 mand, setting nought both by Captain *Pinteado*,
 and the Factors; and proceeding even to vile
 Language and Menaces. He took from *Pin-
 teado* the Service of the Boys, and certain
 Mariners, that were assigned him by the Order
 and Direction of the Merchants, and left him
 as a common Seaman: This was a sensible Mor-
 tification to that worthy Commander; because
 nothing can afflict a *Portuguese* or *Spaniard* more,
 than to be deprived of their Honours.

St Nicholas River

SAILING forward, and passing by the *Canaries*,
 they came to the Island of *St. Nicholas*; where
 they victualled with the Flesh of wild Goats,
 which is very plenty there, though scarce any
 thing else is to be met with. From hence they
 pursued their Course; yet, to avoid arriving too
 soon at *Guinea*, on account of the Heats, they
 tarried by the Way at the desert Isles: But be-
 ing under an arbitrary Direction, from whence
 no Good can proceed, tarried too long. At
 length they fell with the great River of *Sesso*, on
 the Coast of *Guinea*, where they might have
 laden their Ships with the Fruit of that Country;
 which is very hot, and much like a Fig as it
 grows on the Tree, being full of Grains, which

Guinea Pepper

are loose within the Cod, having a Hole through
 the Middle^b.

THIS kind of Spice is very much used in cold
 Countries, and may there be sold to great Ad-
 vantage, in Exchange for other Wares: But the
 Men, by the Persuasion, or rather Compulsion,
 of this tragical Captain, setting light by that
 Commodity, in Comparison of the fine Gold
 they thirsted after, sailed an hundred Leagues
 further, till they came to the golden Land^c *Gold Coast*.

Where, without attempting to approach the King
 of *Portugal's* Castle, situate on the River *Mina*,
 they sold their Wares on this Side, and beyond
 it, for the Gold of that Country, to the Quan-
 tity of an 150 Pounds Weight; and might have
 had Gold in Exchange for their whole Cargo, if
Pinteado's Advice could have taken Place. But
Windham, though there was Gold enough where
 he was, would needs go farther; and command-
 ed *Pinteado* (for so he took upon him) to carry
 the Ships to *Benin*, an 150 Leagues beyond, un-
 der the Line, where he proposed to have them
 laden with Pepper. *Pinteado*, considering the late
 Time of the Year, advised him not to go elsewhere,
 but stay and dispose of the Remainder of the Goods
 for Gold. *Windham*, instead of complying, fell
 into a Rage, and reviled him, calling him *Jew*,
 and other opprobrious Names, saying, *this where-
 son Jew hath promised to bring us to such Places as
 are not to be found, or he cannot bring us to. But
 if he do not, I will cut off his Ears, and nail them
 to the Mast.*

PINTEADO's View was to preserve the
 Men, well knowing their Lives would be in
 Danger, either if they got thither too late, or
 too soon: If too late, they were to meet with
 the *Rossia*, which is their Winter; not for Cold,
 but for smothering Heat, with close and cloudy
 Air and stormy Weather, of such putrifying Qua-
 lity, that it rotted the very Cloaths off their Backs:
 If they arrived too soon, then they were to fear
 the scorching Heat of the Sun; which was the
 Reason of their lingering by the Way. Thus
 was he forced, against his Will, to bring the
 Ships to the River of *Benin*. Here casting An-
 chor, they sent their Pinnace up the River fifty
 or sixty Leagues; where Captain *Pinteado*, *Francisco
 a Portugal*, *Nicholas Lambart*, Gentleman,
 and other Merchants landing, they were con-
 ducted to the Court, ten Leagues from thence.
 Being arrived, they were brought amidst a great
 Croud of People to the King's Presence. He was
 a *Black-Moor* (although not so black as the rest)

1554.
Windham and Pinteado

^a The same who performed the two former Voyages to the Coast of *Morokko* ^b At the End of the second
 Voyage he observes, that those Holes (as he was informed afterwards) were to put Strings or Twigs through,
 for hanging them up to dry. They grow not above a Foot and half, or two Foot from the Ground, and are as
 red as Blood when gathered. The Grains themselves are called, by Physicians, *Grana Paradisi*. The Reason
 for giving this Name at first to *Guinea* Pepper, will be mentioned in a Note hereafter.

1553. and fate in a great Hall, long and wide: The Walls were made of Earth, without Windows; but in the Roof, which was of thin Boards, were several Openings, like Funnel's, to let in the Air.

The King's State.

THE King is served with great State: His Noblemen never look him in the Face, but sit cowering upon their Buttocks, with their Elbows upon their Knees, and their Hands before their Faces; nor dare lift up their Eyes, until his Majesty commands them. When they approach him, as soon as they come in View, they assume the same Posture; and when they retire, go creeping backward, with like Reverence, it being a Crime to turn their Backs upon him.

Kindness to the English.

As to what passed between the King and the English, he first caused them to stand up; and then, in Portuguese (which he had learned from his Infancy) he demanded the Cause of their Coming. They answered, by Pinteado, that they were Merchants, and came to exchange the Commodities of their own Country for those of his. The King then desired them to look at thirty or forty Kintals of Pepper, which had lain a long Time in his Storehouses, and to bring him a Sample of their Merchandizes: Thereupon he sent some of his People to conduct the Captain and Merchants to the Water-side; and others to fetch the Wares from the Pinnacle to the Court. When they were returned, and the Wares seen, the King agreed with the Merchants to provide, in thirty Days, the Lading of all their Ships with Pepper; and, in case their Goods should fall short of the Value, he offered to give them Credit till their next Return. He forthwith sent the Country round to gather Pepper, so that within thirty Days no less than fourscore Tuns were brought to the Court.

Wine and feast.

MEAN while the English having no Command of themselves, eat the Fruits, and drank Palm-tree Wine to Excess; neither could they be kept from running continually into the Water to cool their Bodies, melting with the Heat of the Climate. So that not being used before to such sudden and violent Alterations, it brought on Swellings and Agues, towards the latter End of the Year; whereby three or four, and sometimes five, died in a Day. Windam finding his Men drop off so fast, as soon as the thirty Days were expired, sent to Captain Pinteado, and the rest, to come away forthwith: They let him know by Letter, what a great Quantity of Pepper they had already procured, and that they daily expected much more, desiring him not to hurry them, considering what Reputation they should gain, in case they should make a prosperous Voyage, and how shameful it would be to return without full

a Lading. But Windham, not satisfied with this Answer, and the Mortality continuing amongst the Men, sent them Word, that if they did not come away instantly he would leave them behind. Hereupon Pinteado, thinking to persuade him with Reason, returned to the Ships, being conducted thither by the King's Order.

MEAN Time Windham, in a Rage, broke up Pinteado's Cabin and Chests; spoiled such cold stilled Waters and Suckets as he had provided for his Health; and left him nothing either of his Instruments to sail by, or Apparel. Then falling sick himself died also. For all this, Pinteado, when he came aboard, lamented his Death as much as if he had been his best Friend. But his Troubles did not die with Windham. For several, both of the Mariners and Officers, spit in his Face, some calling him *Jesu*, saying he had brought them thither to kill them, and others drawing their Swords at him, offering to kill him. They insisting to leave the Coast, he desired them to stay only till those who were at Court should return from thence; but they would not grant this Request. Then he treated them to let him have the Ship-boat, with a Piece of an old Sail, promising therewith to bring the rest into England. Finding all he said was in vain, he wrote to acquaint the Merchants with what had happened, assuring them, in case he lived, to return forthwith to fetch them. As for Pinteado himself, after being kept aboard against his Will, he was thrust among the Cabin Boys, and worse used than any of them, being glad to find Labour at the Cook's Hand.

HAVING sunk one of their Ships for want of Hands, they departed, and six or seven Days after, Pinteado died, heart-broken with his cruel Usage: A Man worthy to serve any Prince. And of seventscore Men scarce forty returned to Plymouth, of whom also many died.

EDEN, who, with a generous Concern all along, resents the ill Usage of Pinteado, a Stranger, at the End of this Voyage farther acquaints his Readers, that after he had been long imprisoned by the King, he was released on the Representation of that Prince's Confessor, a Grey Friar, who made known his Innocence, that it was Poverty, and not any Crime which obliged him to leave his Country. That the King, repenting of his Severity towards him, by Letters Patent, dated the twentieth of September, 1551, in Consideration of his good Services, made him a Knight of his Household, with a Pension of 700 Rees (or ten Shillings) a Month, and an Alcaire (or half Bushel) of Barley, so long as he kept a Horse.

THIS Patent is to be found both in his and

• Every Kintal is 100 Weight.

Hakluyt's

1554. Lok. *Hakluyt's Collection; with Francisco de Sequeyras, a*
the Secretary's Declaration of the King's Grant,
written underneath the same. Likewise a Letter
from Don Luis, the Infanto, the King's Brother,
to Pinteado, dated the eighth of December, 1552.
to let him know that one Gonfaluves was sent to
bring him home; and signifying the Desire both
the King and himself had that he would return,
being sensible he was able to do his Sovereign
much Service, and concludes with Professions of
gratifying him all in his Power. Eden saw the b

Originals in the Hands of his Friend *Nicholas*
Liese, with whom Pinteado left them, at his De-
parture for Guinea; which Voyage he had per-
suaded the Merchants to undertake. But he far-
ther takes Notice, that notwithstanding those
friendly Overtures, Pinteado durst not venture
home, nor so much as to converse with his
Countrymen, unless in Company with Others:
In regard he had private Intimation given him,
that they intended to murder him, if they could
but find a proper Opportunity.

1554
Lok.

C H A P. III.

*The second Voyage to Guinea, in 1554, by Captain John Lok^a. Written by one of
the principal Pilots.*

S E C T. I.

They pass through the Canaries. Come to Cape de
las Barbas. Raise the Cross. Cape Mensura-
do. Rivers Sesto and Dulce. Shawgro and
Shyawe Towns. Port St. Vincent. Cape Tres
Puntas. Samma. Cape Korca. La Mina
Castle. Perikow Grande.

P. Lamb'e.

MR. Eden observes, that as in the first
Voyage he had delivered rather the Or-
der of the History, than Course of the Naviga-
tion, which, at that Time, he could get no
right Information of; so in this second Voyage,
his chief Intent was to give a regular Journal
thereof, in the same Words, without any Alter-
ation, as he received it from one of the chief
Pilots^b employed in the Voyage, a skilful Navi-
gator, who committed his Observations to Writ-
ing. The Adventurers were Sir George Barne,
Sir John York, Thomas Lok, Antony Hickman,
and Edward Castelin. Eden tells us, that the
Author made use of nautical Instruments; but
the Latitudes he gives us, if observed, are not
exact.

*The Fleet
just out.*

THE eleventh of October, 1554, they left the
Thames, with three good Ships, the *Trinity*, 140
Tuns; the *Bartholomew*, of ninety, and the
John Evangelist, 140. There were likewise
two Pinnaces (whereof the one was drowned on
the Coast of England.) Having staid at Dover
fourteen Days, and at Rye, three or four, they
last of all touched at *Dartmouth*; and thence
proceeding, the first of November, nine at Night,
they set off the *Start*, bearing South-West,

and, by the third, about Noon, ran three-score
Leagues.

THE seventeenth, in the Morning, they had
Sight of *Madera*, which in the North North-
East Part, appears very high; and, to the South
South-East, is a low long Land, and a long
Point, with a Saddle thorough the Middle of it,
standing in thirty-two Degrees. In the West
Part they saw many Springs of Water, descend-
ing from the Mountain; also several white Fields,
like Corn Fields, and some white Houses to the
South-East. The Top of the Mountain seemed
very ragged; and, in the North-East Part, there
is a Bight or Bay, resembling a Harbour: Also
a Rock at a little Distance from the Shore; and
over the said Bight you shall see a great Gap in
the Mountain.

THE nineteenth, at Noon, they had Sight of
the Isle of *Palme*, *Teneriffa*, and the *Canaries*.
The first (which lies in twenty-eight Degrees)
riseth round, and extends South-East, and North-
West; the North-West Part is lowest. In the
South is a round Hill over the head Land; and
another round Hill above that in the Land. Be-
tween the South-East Part of *Madera*, and the
North-West Part of *Palme* Isle, are fifty-seven
Leagues. Their Course South, and South by
West, so that they had Sight of *Teneriffa*, and
of the *Canaries*. The South-East Part of the Isle
of *Palme* is distant from the North North-East of
Teneriffa, twenty Leagues North-West. *Tene-*
riffa and the great *Canarie*, called *Gran Cana-*
ria, and the West Part of *Forteventura*, stand in
twenty-seven Degrees and a half. *Gomera* is a

^a In prefixing the Name of Lok to this Voyage, we follow the last Edition of *Hakluyt* (as generally we do) but in the first Edition, p. 89 it is given under the Name of *Robert Gamsh*, who was Master of the *John Evangelist*, as we are informed by a marginal Note, at the Beginning, in both Copies. ^b Perhaps this might be *Gamsh* himself.

1551.
Lok.

fair Island but very ragged, and lieth West South-
West of *Teneriff*; and the Course in sailing be-
tween them South by East. In the South Part of
Gomera is a Town, and good Road for Ships: It
stands in twenty-seven Degrees and forty-five Mi-
nutes. *Teneriffa* is high Land, with a great high
Pike like a Sugar Loaf, whose Top is covered with
Snow throughout the Year. By this Mark it may
be known above all other Islands. Here they
were becalmed the twentieth of *November*, from
six in the Morning, till four Afternoon.

THE twenty-second, under the Tropick of
Cancer, the Sun sets West by South. Upon the
Coast of *Barbary*, twenty-five Leagues North of
Cape *Blanke*, three Leagues from Shore, there
are fifteen Fathoms, no Streams, and good shelly
Ground mixed with Sand; also two small
Islands in twenty-two Degrees, twenty Minutes.

Cape de las
Barbas.

FROM *Gomera*, they sailed South by East
an hundred Leagues to Cape *de las Barbas*, in
twenty-two and a half: All that Coast is very
flat with sixteen or seventeen Fathom Water; and
from that Cape, till within seven or eight
Leagues of the River *del Oro*, is frequented by
Spaniards and *Portugals*, who trade for Fish,
during the Month of *November*. From thence
they steered South South-West, and South-West
by South, till they came into twenty Degrees
and a half, reckoning themselves seven Leagues
off [Shore:] And there were the least Shoals of
Cape *Blanke*.

Constellation
Cruz.

THEN they went South, till they got into
thirteen Degrees, and by Estimation twenty-five
Leagues off. They discovered the *Crossiers*, when
they were in fifteen Degrees; and might have
done it sooner, if they had looked for them.
Those Constellations are not right across in *No-
vember*, by Reason that the Nights are short
there: Nevertheless they had Sight of them the
twenty-ninth of the same Month.

THE first of *December*, being in thirteen De-
grees they proceeded South by East, till the fourth
at Noon, when they were in nine Degrees twenty
Minutes, and by Estimation thirty Leagues West
South-West of the Shoals of the *Rio Grande*,
which are thirty Leagues long.

THE fourth, being in six Degrees thirty Mi-
nutes, they began to set their Course South-East.
The ninth, they directed it East South-East:
And the fourteenth East, being then in five De-
grees, thirty Minutes, and by Computation thirty-
six Leagues from the Coast of *Guinea*.

THE nineteenth, they sailed East by North,
seventeen Leagues distant from Cape *Mensurado*,
which bore East North-East, and the River of
Sesto East.

Cape Men-
surado

THE twenty-first, they fell with Cape *Mensu-
rado*, to the South East, about two Leagues off;
which rising like the Head of a Porpoise, may

VOL. I. No. VII.

be easily known: It stands nearly in six De-
grees. Also to the South-East, there are three
Trees; the easternmost is the highest, the mid-
dlemost like a Hay-Stack, and the southernmost
resembles a Gibbet. Upon the Main, are four or
five high Hills rising one after another like
round Hillocks, and the South-East of three
Trees, *braudernwisc*. The whole Coast is a
white Sand.

THE twenty-second, they came to the River
Sesto, and remained there till the twenty-ninth.
From hence they sent before them the Pinnace
to the *Rio Dulce*, that they might have the Be-
ginning of the Market, before the Coming of
the *John Evangelist*.

IN the River of *Sesto*, which stands in six De-
grees lacking a Terce, they had a Tun of Grains.
From whence to *Rio Dulce*, in five Degrees thirty
Minutes, are twenty-five Leagues. The River
of *Sesto* is easy to be known by a Ledge of Rocks
on the South-East Part of the Road. And at the
Entrance of the Haven, there are six Trees
that bear no Leaves. This is a good Harbour,
but very narrow at the Mouth, where there is a
Rock just as you enter. All the Coast between
Cape *de Monte*, and Cape *de las Palmas*, lies
South-East by East, and North-West by West,
being three Leagues off the Shore: And you
shall have in some Places, Rocks two Leagues
off; and that between the River of *Sesto*, and
Cape *de las Palmas*.

FROM the River of *Sesto* to the River *Dulce*,
are twenty-five Leagues, and the high Land be-
tween, which begins eight Leagues from the
former, is called *Cakeado*; to the South-East
whereof is a Place called *Shawgro*, and another
called *Shyawe* or *Shauo*, where you may get fresh
Water. Off *Shyawe* lieth a Ledge of Rocks, and
to the South-East a Head-Land called *Croke*, be-
tween which and *Cakeado* are nine or ten Leagues.
To the South-East hereof, is a Harbour called *S. Vincent*.
Right oyer against which there is a sunk
Rock, two Leagues and a half from Shore. To
the South-East of that Rock, there appears an
Island about three or four Leagues distant, and
not above one from the Coast. East South-East
of the Island, is a Rock, that rises above the Water,
and the Entrance of the River *Dulce*, which
thereby may be known. The North-West Side
of the Haven is flat Sand: The South-East Side
resembles an Island, and is a bare Plot without any
Trees, such as is not any where else. Ships ride
in thirteen or fourteen Fathoms, good Ouze and
Sand; being the Marks of the Road to bring the
Island and the North-East Land together. Here
they anchored the last of *December*.

THE third of *January*, they left the River
Dulce. Note, that Cape *de las Palmas*, is a high
Land; but on the East Side there are some

1551
Lok.

low

low Places by the Shore, which look like red a
Cliffs, with white Streaks, resembling high
Ways, each the Length of a Cable. This
Cape is the Southermost Land in all the Coast of
Guinea, and standeth in four Degrees one third.

Cape tres
Puntas. THE Coast from Cape de las Palmas to Cape
Trepintes, or de tres Puntas, is fair and clear,
without Rock or other Danger. And twenty-
five Leagues from the former Cape, the Land is
higher then in any other Place, till you come to
the latter; about ten Leagues short of which, b
it rises gradually all the way thither: Likewise,
five Leagues before you come to it to the North-
West, there is certain broken Ground, and two
great Rocks; within which in the Bight of a
Bay, is a Castle called *Arra*, belonging to the
King of Portugal, easily known by the said Rocks
that lie off it, there being none such, from

Arra Castl. Cape de las Palmas to Cape Trepintes. This
Coast lies East by North, and West by South.
From Cape de las Palmas to *Arra*, are ninety- c
five Leagues; and the Coast from that Castle to
the Westernmost Point of Trepintes, lies South-
East by South, and North-West by North. This
Westernmost Point is a low Land, running out
half a Mile into the Sea: Also upon the inner-
most Neck, to the Landward, is a Tuft of
Trees, and there they arrived the eleventh of
January.

Samma
Town. THE twelfth of January, they came to a
Town called *Samma* or *Samua*, eight Leagues d
East North-East from Cape Trepintes: In the
Way, is a great Ledge of Rocks far out to Sea.
They continued four Days at that Town, the
Captain whereof would needs have a Pledge: Ac-
cordingly one was sent (being Sir John York's
Nephew) whom, when they had received, they
detained, and would traffick no more; but shot
at them with their Ordnance, whereof they have
only two or three Pieces.

Cape Korea
or Corea. THE sixteenth Day, they came to a Place called e
Cape Korea, where Captain Don John dwelleth,
whose Men entertained them friendly. This
Cape is four Leagues Eastward of the Castle of
Mina, otherwise called *La Mina*, or *Castello de*
Mina; where they arrived the eighteenth, and
made Sale of all their Cloth, saving two or three
Packs.

Castle La
Mina. THE twenty-sixth, they sailed forward to the
Trinity, which was seven Leagues Eastward of
them, where she sold her Wares; and willed f
them to go Eastward of that eight or nine Leagues,
in order to sell more in two other Places: The
first called *Perskow*, the farther *Perskow Grande*.
This last may be known by a great round
Hill, named *Mont Rodondo*, lying near it on the
West; and by the Water-side are many high
Balm-trees.

Perskow
Grande.

They return. Cape Verd Islands. Raise the North
Star. Gold of Summa. Goods brought home.
Large Teeth and Head of an Elephant. Ele-
phant described. Inhabitants of the Coast. Heat
from the Moon. Water Spouts. Ship cast on
Land. Negro Ornaments. Huge Blacelets.
Their Exaltiness in dealing. Buildings, Diet
Houses thatched with Dough. Excellent Corn.
Palm Wine. The Ships sheathed with Shells.
Diversity of Climates and Complexions.

FROM hence they set forth homeward the
thirteenth of February, and plied up along till
they came within seven or eight Leagues of Cape
Trepintes. The fifteenth about eight at Night,
they cast about to seaward: Here beware of the
Currents, for they will deceive you greatly. In
returning from the Coast of Mina, be sure make
your Way good West, as far as Cape de las Pal-
mas; where the Current always sets Westward.
And within twenty Leagues Eastward of that
Cape, you may have fresh Water, and Balast
enough, with Plenty of Ivory, or Elephants
Teeth, at the River de los Potos, which is in
four Degrees and almost two thirds; and when
you reckon your self as far shot as the Cape, be-
ing in a Degree, or a Degree and a half of Lati-
tude, you may go West and West by North,
till you come into three Degrees. And then you
may go West North-West, and North-West by
West, till you come in five Degrees; after
which proceed North-West. In six Degrees they
met with Northerly Winds, and great ruffling
Tides; the Currents trending, as they judged, to
the North North-West. Moreover, between
Cape de Monte and Cape Verde, there run great
Currents, which deceive many.

THE twenty-second of April; they were in
eight Degrees: And so they ran to the North-
West, having the Wind at North-East, and
East North-East, and sometimes at East, till
May Day, that they came into eighteen Degrees
twenty Minutes. And so from eighteen, forty
Minutes, they had the Wind at East and East
North-East, and sometimes at East South-East;
and then they reckoned the Islands of Cape Verde, Cape Verd
to lie to the East South-East, forty-eight Leagues Islands.
off. In twenty and twenty one Degrees, they
had the Wind more Easterly to the Southward
than before; and so they ran to the North-West,
and North North-West, and sometimes North
by West, and North, till they came into thirty-
one Degrees: Where they reckoned themselves
a hundred and fourscore Leagues South-West by
South of the Island de los Flores; and there
meeting with the Wind at South South-East,
set their Course North-East.

1554. Lok. ^{1554. Lok.}
 In twenty three Degrees, they had the Wind at South and South-West, and then they steered North North-East, till they got into forty Degrees; after this they bore North-East, the Wind being at the South-West, and the Island Flores seventeen Leagues East of them.

IN forty-one Degrees, they met with the Wind at North-East, and ran North-Westward. Then it blew West North-West, and at the West, within six Leagues, they running toward the North-West. Presently they cast about, and lay North-East, till they came into forty-two Degrees, where they set their Course East North-East, judging the Isle of *Coruo* to be thirty-six Leagues distant, South by West.

THE twenty-first of *May*, they consulted with *John Rafe*, and he thought it best to go North-East, and judged himself to be twenty-five Leagues Eastward of the Isle *de Flores*, in thirty-nine Degrees and an half.

ON the fourth of *September*, under nine Degrees, they lost the Sight of the North Star. And in forty-five Degrees, the Compass varied eight Degrees to the West. In forty Degrees, it varied fifteen Degrees in the whole. And in thirty Degrees and half, five Degrees to the West.

THE Author observes here, that two or three Days before they came to *Cape de Tres Puntas*, the Pinnace went along the Shore, thinking to sell some Wares, so their Ship cast Anchor, three or four Leagues West by South of the Cape, where they left the *Trinity*, and their Pinnace came aboard for more Goods. They told him, they would go to a Place rich in Gold, where the *Primrose* had taken in a considerable Quantity in the first Voyage. He fearing a Brigantine, that was then upon the Coast, followed them, leaving the *Trinity* about four Leagues behind. They rode before that Town four Days. So that *Martin*, by his own Desire, and Assent of some of the Commissioners, that were in the Pinnace, went ashore; and *John Berin* went to trade at another Town three Miles off. The Town is called *Samma* or *Samua*; for *Samma* and *Samma-terra*, are the Names of the two first Towns, where they trafficked for Gold, to the North-East of *Cape de Tres Puntas*.

THE Pilot's Journal of the Voyage ends here. After which, Mr. *Eden* adds some Account of the Country, the People, and such Things as are brought from thence; partly from *Ptolemy*, *Gemma Frisius* and other Geographers; and partly from the Report of those who made the Voyage, which Remarks only we shall insert here.

* We have omitted a long Account of the Elephant, extracted from *Pliny*, *Solinus*, *Philostratus*, &c. As well as a Description of *Africa* from *Gemma Frisius*, referring the Reader to those Authors.

THE Ships brought home this Time 400 Pound Weight and odd of Gold, of twenty-two Carrats and one Grain in Fineness: Also thirty-six Buts of Grains [*Guinea Pepper*]; and about 250 Elephants Teeth of different Sizes. Mr. *Eden* measured some nine Spans in Length, as they were bent. Others were as thick as a Man's Thigh, and weighed about four-score and ten Pound Weight apiece. They say, some have been seen that weighed an hundred and twenty-five Pound each. There was another Sort, which they call Teeth of Calves, of one, two, or three Years old; whereof some were a Foot and half, others two Foot, and some three or more long, according to the Age of the Beast. The great Teeth or Tusks grow in the upper Jaw downward, and not in the nether Jaw upwards, as the Painters and Arras-Workers represent them.

THEY brought also from *Guinea*, the Head of an Elephant, which Mr. *Eden* saw at Sir *Andrew Juddes*, Merchant; so very large, that the Bones or Skull only, exclusive of the nether Jaw and great Tusks, weighed about 200 Weight, and was as much as the Author could well lift from the Ground. So that he concluded, if the two great Teeth, the nether Jaw with the lesser Teeth, the Tongue, the great hanging Ears, the big and long Snout or Trunk, with all the Flesh, Brains, Skin, and other Parts belonging to the Head, were added, the whole could weigh little less than 500 Weight.

THE Elephant (which some call an Oliphant) is the biggest of all four-footed beasts. His fore Legs are longer then his hinder. He hath Ancles in the lower Part of his hinder Legs, and five Toes on his Feet, undivided. His Snout or Trunk is so long, and in such Form, that it serves instead of a Hand: For therewith he brings both Meat and Drink to his Mouth, helps up his Master or Keeper, and overthrows Trees. Beside his two great Tusks, he hath, for chewing his Food, on every Side of his Mouth, four Teeth, each extending in the Jaw, almost a Span in Length; and is about two Inches in Height, and near as much in Thickness. The Tusks of the Male are greater than those of the Female. His Tongue is very little, and so far back within his Mouth, that it cannot be seen.

THE *Nigritæ* (or *Negros*) possess a great Part of *Africa*, extending Westward to the Ocean, and Southward to the River *Nigritis* (or *Niger*) which increases and diminishes at the same Time with the *Nile*; and produces the same Kind of Animals, as Crocodiles. For which Reason, *Eden* takes it for that called by the *Portu-*

1554. *guezze Senaga* *. Those who made the Voyage, a which the *English* had in Exchange, were certain 1554. Lok. Chains and Collars for Dogs.

That on one Side, the Inhabitants are tall and black; and on the other Side, low of Stature and tawny.

SOME among them of good Credit affirmed, that in the Night they felt a sensible Heat, proceeding from the Beams of the Moon ^b. They likewise saw certain Streams of Water, which they call Spouts, falling out of the Air, some of them as big as the great Pillars in Churches, b which lighting upon Ships, put them in great Danger of sinking. *Eden*, at a Loss to account for these Spouts, supposes them to be such Eruptions of the Sea, as *Aristotle* speaks of in his *Book de Mundo* Where among the rest, he says, at certain Times a great Quantity of Water is lifted up and carried about with the Moon; which Water rising in one Place, *Eden* infers, falls down in another

ON Occasion of these violent Motions of the c Sea, he relates, that *Richard Chancellor* told him, he heard *Sebastian Cabot* say, that somewhere upon the Coast of *Brasil*, or *Rio de la Plata* (to the best of his Memory) his Ship or Pinnace was suddenly lifted from the Sea, and cast a good way upon Land.

TOUCHING the Manners and Nature of the People on the *Guinea* Coasts: Their Princes and Noblemen pounce and raise their Skins in divers Figures, like flowered Damask. And although they go in a Manner all naked, yet many d of them, especially their Women, are, as it were, laden with Collars, Bracelets, Hoops and Chains, either of Gold, Copper or Ivory. I myself (says *Eden*) have one of their Ivory Bracelets, weighing thirty-eight Ounces. It was made of one whole Piece of the thickest Part of the Tooth, turned and somewhat carved, with a Hole in the Midst, to let the Hand through. Some wear one on each Arm and Leg, where-with they are often so gauled, as to become in a Manner lame; yet they will by no Means leave them off. Some wear also on their Legs, great Shackles of bright Copper; which they think to be no less comely. They likewise make use of Collars, Bracelets, Garlands and Girdles of certain blue Stones like Beads. Some of their Women wear on their bare Arms, certain Fore-sleeves, made of Plates of beaten Gold, and on their Fingers, Rings of Gold Wire, with a Knot or Wreath, like that which Children make in Rush Rings. Among other Things of Gold,

THEY are very wary in bargaining, and will not lose the least Spark of Gold. They have ^{Excellt in Traff} Weights and Measures, and are very circum-spect in them. Whoever would deal with them, must behave civilly; for they will not traffick if they be ill used. In the first Voyage it happened, that one of the *English* Sailors stole, or took away by Force a *Musk* (or *Croût*) Cat from the Place they first touched at, never imagining that a Fraud committed in one Place would hinder their Trading in another. But although they made what haste they could to the Port they next designed for, yet the News of the Injury got there before them: Which so offended the Inhabitants, that they would bring down no Wares to the Sea-side, till such Time as the Aggressor had either restored the Cat, or payed for her at their own Price.

THEIR Houses are made of four Posts or ^{Houses Diet.} Trees, and covered with Boughs. Their common Food is Roots, and Fish, whereof they have great Plenty. Among the rest is the flying Fish, like those in the *West Indian* Sea. The *English* intended to lay in Provision of their Fish, but found they would not take Salt: Some say, they must be eaten forthwith; yet others affirm, that being salted immediately after they are taken, they will keep ten or twelve Days. But what is more strange; Part of the Flesh they carried out of *England*, which putrified there, became sweet again at their Return into the temperate Climates.

THEIR Bread is made and baked after an odd ^{Their Bread.} Manner. They grind with their Hands between two Stones, as much Corn as they think may suffice their Family; and having thus brought it to Flour, make thereof very thin Dough, which they stick upon some Post of their Houses; where it is baked by the Heat of the Sun, and lies till they take it down to eat.

THEY have very fair Wheat, the Ear whereof ^{Excellent Corn.} is two Handfuls in Length, and as large as a great Bulrush; being almost four Inches about, where thickest. The Stem or Straw seems near as thick as a Man's little Finger: The Wheat itself is round like Pease, and very white, shining like Pearls, that have lost their Lustre. Almost the whole Substance turns into Flour, making f little or no Bran. Mr. *Eden* counted in one Ear, two hundred and threescore Grains. The Ear is inclosed in three Blades, each longer than itself,

* Others suppose the *Gambia* is the same with, or a Branch of, the *Niger*: But in all likelihood they are all different Rivers. ^b The Author seems to take the Planets for fiery Bodies, like the Stars, and quotes *Pliny* for his Authority, also the Words of *Psalms* cxxi. 6. *The Sun shall not burn thee by Day, neither the Moon by Night.* If this Phenomenon be Fact, it must be owing to the Moon's reflecting the Sun's Beams; for she has none of her own.

1554. and two Inches broad: And by this Fertility, the Sun seems in Part to make amends for the great Inconveniencies the Natives incur from its intense Heat.

Wine. THEIR Drink is either Water, or the Juice that drops from the cut Branches of the barren Date Trees, called *Palmitos*: To receive which, they hang either great Gourds at the said Branches every Evening, or else set them underneath the Trees, that the Drops may fall therein till Morning. They say, this Liquor tastes much like Whey, but somewhat more sweet, and pleasant. They cut the Branches in the Evening, because they are closed by the Heat in the Day. They have also great Beans as big as Chestnuts, and very hard, with a Shell instead of a Husk.

Ships beat- ed with Shells. WHEN they came home, they found the Keels of their Ships quite covered with certain Shells, more than two Inches in Length, and wide enough to put one's Thumb in. The Author saw the *Prinnose* in the Dock almost covered with them; which, in his Opinion, must have hindered her Sailing. They affirm, that in these there grow certain slimy Substances, which at length, slipping out into the Sea, become those Fowls which we call *Barnacles* ^a. The like Shells have been seen on Ships returning from *Ireland*, but not past half an Inch in Length. Their Ships were also in several Parts eaten with the Worms, called *Bromas* and *Biffas*, whereof Mention is made in the *Decades* ^b. These creep between the Planks, which they eat through in many Places.

Difference of Climes. IT is observable, that whereas they sailed to *Guinea* in seven Weeks, they could not return in less than twenty. This they imputed to the Wind being continually at East, about the Coast of *Cabo Verde*, so that they were forced to sail far out of their Course into the Ocean, to find a West Wind to bring them home. They lost this last Voyage about twenty-four of their Men, whereof many died at their Return into the cold Climates; as between the Islands of *Azores* and *England*. They brought with them certain black

a Slaves; some of them were tall and strong Men, and could well agree with our Meats and Drinks; the cold and moist Air doth somewhat offend them. Yet the Author takes it for granted, that Men born in hot Regions, may better endure cold, than the Natives of cold Countries can bear Heat, in regard (he says) vehement Heat dissolves the radical Moisture, but Cold constringes and preserves it.

IT is a surprising Operation of Nature, that whereas every where under, and near the Line, throughout *Africa*, the Regions are extreme hot, and the People very black, with short curled and woolly Hair; on the contrary, the Countries in the *West-Indies*, (or *America*) within the same Limits, are very temperate, and the People of an Olive Colour, with long and black Hair. The Cause of which Variety, is explained in divers Places in the *Decades* (before-mentioned.) Mr. *Eden* thinks it also worth taking notice of, that those who performed the Voyage, overtook the Sun, (in their Passage outward) having had it to the North of them the fourteenth of *March* at Noon.

TABLE of LATITUDES Observed.

				Lat.	
				Degr.	Min.
<i>Madera</i>	N. N. E. Point	—	—	32	0
<i>Palma</i>	Island	—	—	28	0
<i>Teneriffa</i>	}	—	—	27	30
<i>Grand Canaria</i>		—	—	22	20
<i>Two Isles</i>	—	—	—	22	30
<i>C. de las Barbas</i>	—	—	—	6	00
<i>C. Mensurado</i>	—	—	—	5	40
<i>Sesto River</i>	—	—	—	4	20
<i>C. de las Palmas</i>	—	—	—	4	40
<i>De los Potos River</i>	—	—	—		

Variation of the Compass.

In Latitude	45 0	Variat.	8 0	W.
	40 0		15 0	
	30 30		5 0	

^a In this, doubtless, they either imposed on him, or were imposed on themselves. I presume, those of *Peter Martyr*, Part of which *Eden* translated and published

^b He means, we

C H A P. IV.

1555. *The First Voyage made to the Coast of Guinea, by William Townson, Merchant of London, in 1555.* 1555. Townson.

S E C T. I.

They pass the Canary Isles. Fall with the Barbary Shore. Rio del Oro. Capes Blanco and Verde. Coast of Guinea. Thunder and Lightning. Dangerous Shore. River San Vincent. The Inhabitants. Trade for Pepper.

Leaves
Newport

ON Monday the thirtieth of September, they left Newport Haven, in the Isle of Wight, with two good Ships, the *Hart* and *Hind*, both of London. The Masters were *John Ralph*, and *William Carter*; being bound to the River de *Sestos* in Guinea, and other Ports thereabout.

THE Winds were so various, that it was the fourteenth of October, before they could fetch the Road of *Dartmouth*: Where having continued six Days, the twentieth they warped out, and set Sail, directing their Course South-West; and next Morning they had run, by Estimation, thirty Leagues.

THE first of November, they found themselves in thirty-one Degrees of Latitude, by the Reckoning of their Master; and ran this Day about forty Leagues.

THE second, they sailed thirty-six Leagues.

Porto Santo
described.

THE third, they had Sight of *Porto Santo*, which is a small Island in thirty-three Degrees Latitude, about three Leagues long, and one and half broad, possessed by the *Portuguese*. It appeared to them, coming from the North North-West, like two small Hills near together. The East End is a high Land, like a Saddle, caused by a Valley. The West End is lower, with certain small round Hillocks. The same Day at eleven, they raised the Island of *Madera*, twelve Leagues from *Porto Santo*. Towards the South-West the Land is fair and fruitful; it is inhabited by *Portuguese*. It appears afar off, like a great *Whole Land*, and high. By three of the Clock, Afternoon, they were athwart of *Porto Santo*, and bore South-West, to leave the *Madera* to the East. About three in the Morning, they were within three Leagues of the West End of *Madera*, and, by Means of the high Hills there, were becalmed; having ran, by Computation, thirty Leagues in the Whole.

Madera.

THE fourth, they lay still, becalmed till one o' Clock, Afternoon; and then the Wind blow-

ing from the East, they set Sail, and ran that Day fifteen Leagues.

THE fifth, they ran fifteen Leagues more.

THE sixth, in the Morning, they raised the Pike of Isle of *Teneriff*, otherwise called the *Pike*; because it is a very high Island, with a Pike on the Top, like a Sugar Loaf. The same Night, they saw the Isle of *Palma*, which is high also, and to the West of *Teneriff*.

THE seventh, they perceived the Isle of *Go-Gomera*, which lies betwixt *Teneriff* and *Palma*, about twelve Leagues Eastward of the latter, and eight Leagues West of the former. But for Fear of being becalmed by this, they left both Isles to the East, and passed betwixt *Palma* and *Gomera*, having ran this Day and Night, thirty Leagues. Note, that these Islands are sixty Leagues from *Madera*; and that there are three more to the Westward of *Teneriff*, named the *Grand Canaria*, *Forte Ventura*, and *Lancerot*, (inhabited by *Spaniards*) of which Islands they came not in Sight.

THIS Day also they had Sight of *Ferro*, which is thirteen Leagues to the Southward of the other Islands, and is possessed by *Spaniards*. All this Day and Night, by Reason of the Wind, they could not double the Point of *Ferro*, except they had gone to the Westward of it, which would have been much out of their Way. Wherefore they tacked about, and ran back five Hours East North-East, to the End they might double it upon the next Board, the Wind continuing South-East, a Thing which seldom happened upon that Coast; for the Wind blows there, for the most Part, North-East, and East North-East. So upon the other Board, by next Morning, they were in a Manner with the Island, and had Room enough to double the same.

THE eighth, they kept their Course as near the Wind as they could; because being scanty, they could not go their due Course to fetch the Coast of *Barbary*, which was South-East by East. They ran this Day and Night twenty-five Leagues; the ninth, thirty Leagues; the tenth, twenty-five Leagues; and the twelfth, twenty-four.

THE twelfth, they saw a Sail under their Lee, which they took for a Fisherman; and meant to have spoken with him: But an Hour after, there

^a This Voyage is taken from *Hakluyt*, Vol. 2. part. 2. p. 23. It contains thirteen Pages, and seems to have been written by Mr. *Townson* himself, who may be considered as Captain; and so we sometimes call him. He performed this Voyage the Year before, as appears from several Passages in the following Journal: So that it is his first Voyage only as Captain, or chief Director in it.

^b It should be Eastward.

1555. *Towson.* fell such a Fog, that they could neither see the Ship, nor one the other. They shot off divers Pieces to the *Hind*, but she heard them not. After Noon, she shot off a Piece which the *Hart* heard, and answered with another. Half an Hour after, the Fog brake up; and they found themselves within four Leagues of the *Barbary* Shore, in fourteen Fathom Water: The Bark ^a also came and anchored with them, by Reason of the contrary Wind. When they fell with the Land, they could not justly tell what Part it was; because most of that Coast being low Land, one has nothing to judge by, but the Shore itself, which is white like Chalk or Sand, and very deep to the very Strand. By the Pilot's Reckoning, they were sixteen Leagues to the East of the River *del Oro*. Here they immediately began to fish, and found great Store of what the *Portuguese* commonly fish for upon that Coast, which they call *Pergeffes*, and the *French*, *Saders*; but the *English*, Salt-water *Breams*. During the Fog, the Ship which they followed, steered such a Course, that they could see her no more, by Reason of the shooting off to find the *Hind* again.
- See another Sail.* THE thirteenth, Afternoon, the *Hart* spied a Sail making toward them, which they judged to be the Sail that they saw the Day before. The Captain ordered the *Hind* to weigh Anchor, and sail up to her, and manned out the Skiff, either to lay her aboard, or to discern what she was. The *Hart* also weighed in half an Hour: But the Vessel perceiving them, tacked about; and shortly after there fell such another Fog, which continuing all that Night, they were constrained to leave the Chace. This Afternoon the Wind came about, and they bore South-West by West, to get clear of the Coast. They ran that Night sixteen Leagues.
- Take a Caravel* THE fourteenth, in the Morning, was very foggy: But about twelve o' Clock, they spied a Caravel of sixty Tons, fishing; and sent their Skiff to her with five Men. The Caravel, for Haste, let slip her Anchor, and set Sail. Which they seeing, pursued her, though without any Weapons, and in the End, overtaking, made her strike, and brought her away, although there were fourteen or fifteen Men aboard, all with Arms; but they had not Hearts to resist. Being come to Anchor near the *Hart*, the Captain caused then the Skiff to come for him; and went aboard to see that no Harm should be done them, nor any Thing taken, but what they were willing to spare for Money. So the *English* had of them, three Tapnets of Figs, two small Pots of Oil, two Pipes of Water, four Hogheads of Salt-fish, which they had taken upon the Coast, and certain fresh Fish, which they did not esteem; be-
- ^a cause there is such Plenty upon that Coast, that in an Hour, and sometimes less, a Man may take as much as will serve twenty for a Day. For these Things, and some Wine, which was drank aboard, and three or four great Cans, which they sent to the Ships, the Captain paid them twenty-seven Pistolets, which was twice as much as they would willingly have taken, and helped them to get up their Anchor and Cable, which they had let slip. After this, they set Sail; but the Wind ^b caused them to anchor again, about twelve Leagues off the River *del Oro*. There were five Caravels more in this Place; but on Sight of the Fleet, they all made off for Fear.
- THE fifteenth, they continued in the same Place, because of the Wind.
- THE sixteenth, they set Sail, and ran forty Leagues. This Day, by the Reckoning of the Pilots, they passed the Tropic of *Cancer*. The seventeenth, they advanced twenty-five Leagues, mostly within Sight of the Coast of *Barbary*.
- THE eighteenth, they sailed thirty Leagues; and at twelve o' Clock, by the Reckoning of the Pilots, they were thwart of Cape *Blanco*.
- THE twenty-second, the Pilots reckoned them to be in the Height of Cape *Verde*.
- THE twelfth of *December*, they had Sight of the Coast of *Guinea*, which as soon as they saw, they hauled into the Land North-East; and about twelve o' Clock at Night, came within less than two Leagues of the Shore; then tacked about, and found eighteen Fathom Water. Afterwards they saw a Light towards the Shore, which they took for a Ship; and thereby judging it to be the River *de Sestos* ^b, forthwith cast Anchor, armed their Tops, and made all Things ready to fight, doubting it might be some *Portuguese* or *Frenchman*. But in the Morning, seeing no Vessel, they judged the Light came from Shore. About two *English* Miles from them, they spied four Rocks, one great, and three small. Then they proceeded East South-East along the Shore, because the Master did not well know the Place; but thought they were not so far East as the River *de Sestos*.
- ALL this Land is low, and full of very high Trees along the Shore; so that it is not possible to know whereabouts one is, except by the Latitude. In these twenty-four Hours, they ran sixteen Leagues: For all the Night they had a great Gale, with much Thunder and Lightning.
- THE thirteenth, for the most Part, they ran East South-East, two Leagues from the Coast, and found the Land full of Woods, and great Rocks close to the Shore, against which the Sea beat violently; the Waves breaking as white as Snow, and mounting so high, that they might

^a This seems to be a distinct Vessel from the *Hind*.^b Or *Sestos*.

1555.
Townson

easily be discerned four Leagues off, in such wise, that no Boat could land there. At Noon they took the Sun, and judged themselves to be twenty-four Leagues to the East of the River de Sestos: Therefore they stood towards Land, and anchored within two *English* Miles of Shore, in fifteen Fathom Water, where the Sea was so smooth, that they might have rid by an Hawser. That Afternoon they trimmed the Boat, that she might go along by the Shore to seek some Place to water in. For they could not turn back again to the River de Sestos, because both Wind and Current is always contrary, the latter running continually Eastwards.

A Watering-
place.

THE fourteenth, they went back again along the Coast, and about Noon, the Boats found a Watering-place. Being far out at Sea, they met with divers Boats of the Country, small, long, and narrow, with only one Man in each, to whom they gave Bread, which they were very glad of. About four o' Clock, their Boats came to them with fresh Water; and this Night they anchored against a River.

River St.
Vincent.

THE fifteenth, they weighed, and set Sail to go near the Shore. They sounded all the Way, and found sometimes Rocks, sometimes fair Ground; and never less than seven Fathom at the least. Within a Mile of Shore, they met with seven Fathom and a half; and there anchored in a Manner before the Mouth of the River: It is called *St. Vincent* in the Charts; and about a Mile up it, the Boats found very good Water. The River lieth in four Degrees and half, and is by Estimation, eight Leagues beyond the *Sestos*: But is so hard to find, that a Boat shall not discern it at half a Mile Distance, because the Entrance is quite hidden by a Ledge of Rocks; which being much broader than the River, a Boat must run in a good Day betwixt the Rocks and the Shore, before it come at the Mouth. But the River itself is very large, and divers others fall into it: However the Entrance is somewhat inconvenient, because the Sea runs pretty high; but being once within, it is as calm as the *Thames*.

Inhabitants.

THIS River is inhabited near the Sea, by a very large Kind of People, who go all naked; except a Clout to cover their Nakedness, about a quarter of a Yard long, made of the Bark of Trees, which will spin small, after the Manner of Linen. Some wear the like upon their Heads, painted with divers Colours: But, for the most Part, they go bare headed, their Hair being clipped, and shaved in various Manners. Most of them have their Skin rased with divers Works, in Manner of a Leather Jerkin. Both Sexes go alike; so that the Women cannot be known from the

Men, but by their Breasts, which are generally very ugly, and long, hanging down like the Udder of a Goat. Many have them of such a Length, that they lay them on the Ground, and lie down upon them.

1555.
Townson.

THE same Morning, they went into the River with the Skiff, and carried Basons, Manels, &c. and took that Day, one Hogthead, and one hundred Weight of Grains*, and two Elephant's Teeth, at a reasonable Rate. They sold them, both Manellios, and Margarits, but they liked Basons best: For each of which, they had about thirty Pound [Weight of Grains;] and for an Elephant's Tooth of thirty Pound Weight, they gave the Negroes six [Basons].

THE sixteenth, in the Morning, they carried some of every Sort of their Merchandize: But the Natives made light of them, as well as of the Wares they were so fond of the Day before; offering for Basons what could not be taken. So that this Day they bought not above one hundred Pound Weight of Grains, by Means of the Negro's Captain, who would suffer none to sell any Thing, but through his Hands, and at his Price. He was so subtil, that for a Bason he would not give fifteen Pound Weight of Grains, and sometimes would offer small Dish-fulls; whereas before they had Baskets full. When he found the *English* would not take such Quantity, he departed, with all the Boats, thinking, belike, that they would have followed them, and complied with their Terms. But perceiving their Drift, they weighed their Crapnel, and went away.

Trade with
the Negroes.

S E C T. II.

Towns and Manufactures of the Negros. Manner of Traffic. Easily offended. Tides. Trees, and all Vegetables, ever-green. The People idle Their Language. Invite the English to trade. Cape das Palmas. Best Part for Pepper. Eggs without Shells. River and Town. The Inhabitants swear by the Sea. Trade for Elephants Teeth.

AFTER this, going on Land to see the Country, threescore of them came about the *English*, of whom at first they were afraid; but at length, finding no Harm was done them, grew familiar, and would come and take them by the Hand. On the other Side, those who landed, went into their Towns: Which consisted of about twenty small Hovels, covered with green Leaves, and Baggage; the Sides all open, and a Scaffold underneath the House, about a Yard high, where they lie, and work many pretty Things out of the Barks of Trees. They also forge hand-

Towns and
Manufa-
ctures.

* That is, *Grains of Paradise*: So the *Italians* (from whom we took the Name) called *Guinea Pepper* when first they saw it, not knowing what it was. And hence comes the Name of the *Grain-Coast*.